

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT  
FOR THE DISTRICT OF DELAWARE

UNITED THERAPEUTICS CORPORATION, )  
)  
Plaintiff, )  
) C.A. No. 20-755-RGA-JLH  
v. )  
) Volume III  
LIQUIDIA TECHNOLOGIES, INC., )  
)  
Defendant. )

J. Caleb Boggs Courthouse  
844 North King Street  
Wilmington, Delaware

Wednesday, March 30, 2022  
8:30 a.m.  
Bench Trial

BEFORE: THE HONORABLE RICHARD G. ANDREWS, U.S.D.C.J.

APPEARANCES:

MORRIS NICHOLS ARSHT & TUNNELL LLP  
BY: JACK B. BLUMENFELD, ESQUIRE  
BY: MICHAEL J. FLYNN, ESQUIRE  
BY: SARAH E. SIMONETTI, ESQUIRE

-and-

GOODWIN PROCTER LLP  
BY: WILLIAM C. JACKSON, ESQUIRE  
BY: HUIYA WU, ESQUIRE  
BY: IAN B. BROOKS, ESQUIRE  
BY: JOEL BROUSSARD, ESQUIRE  
BY: HARRISON GUNN, ESQUIRE  
BY: ERIC LEVI, ESQUIRE

- and -

1 APPEARANCES CONTINUED:

2  
3 McDERMOTT WILL & EMERY LLP  
4 BY: DOUGLAS H. CARSTEN, ESQUIRE  
5 BY: ADAM W. BURROWBRIDGE, ESQUIRE  
6 BY: KATHERINE PAPPAS, ESQUIRE  
7 BY: TIMOTHY M. DUNKER, ESQUIRE  
8 BY: ART P. DYKHUIS, ESQUIRE  
9 BY: AMY MAHAN, ESQUIRE  
10 BY: JOSHUA REVILLA, ESQUIRE  
11 BY: JIAXIAO ZHANG, ESQUIRE

12 For the Plaintiffs

13  
14 SHAW KELLER LLP  
15 BY: KAREN E. KELLER, ESQUIRE  
16 BY: NATHAN R. HOESCHEN, ESQUIRE  
17 BY: EMILY DiBENEDETTO, ESQUIRE

18 -and-

19 COOLEY LLP  
20 BY: SANYA SUKDUANG, ESQUIRE  
21 BY: ADAM M. PIVOVAR, ESQUIRE  
22 BY: BRITTANY CAZAKOFF, ESQUIRE  
23 BY: DOUGLAS W. CHEEK, ESQUIRE  
24 BY: JONATHAN R. DAVIES, ESQUIRE  
25 BY: IVOR ELRIFI, ESQUIRE  
BY: DEEPA KANNAPPAN, ESQUIRE  
BY: LAUREN KRICKL, ESQUIRE  
BY: ERIK B. MILCH, ESQUIRE  
BY: KYUNG TAECK MINN, ESQUIRE

For the Defendants

\*\*\* PROCEEDINGS \*\*\*

08:07:47  
08:07:47 20  
08:07:47  
08:29:49 21  
08:29:50 22 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise. Court is now in  
08:29:51 23 session. The Honorable Richard G. Andrews presiding.

08:29:56 24 THE COURT: All right. Good morning, please be  
08:29:58 25 seated.

Waxman - Direct

08:29:59 1 I'm not sure exactly what the order is here, but  
08:30:03 2 whoever is next, please do something.

08:30:07 3 MS. KIM: Good morning, Your Honor. Mandy Kim  
08:30:09 4 on behalf of UT. And we call Dr. Waxman to the stand.

08:34:32 5 MR. FLYNN: Your Honor, may I approach?

08:34:32 6 THE COURT: Sure.

08:34:32 7 DEPUTY CLERK: Please state and spell your full  
08:34:32 8 name for the record.

08:34:32 9 THE WITNESS: Aaron B. Waxman, A-A-R-O-N.  
08:34:32 10 Middle initial B. Last name W-A-X-M-A-N.

08:34:32 11 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
08:34:32 12 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
08:34:32 13 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
08:34:32 14 truth, you do so affirm?

08:34:32 15 THE WITNESS: I do.

08:34:32 16 DEPUTY CLERK: Please speak in the microphone.  
08:34:32 17 Please make sure you speak into it.

08:34:32 18 THE COURT: Thank you.

08:34:32 19 MS. KIM: May I proceed, Your Honor?

08:34:32 20 THE COURT: Yes.

08:34:32 21 DIRECT EXAMINATION

08:34:32 22 BY MS. KIM:

08:34:32 23 Q. Good morning, Dr. Waxman. Please introduce yourself  
08:34:32 24 to the Court and what you do for a living.

08:34:32 25 A. My name is Aaron Waxman, and I'm a physician,

Waxman - Direct

08:34:32 1 pulmonary critical care medicine, at the Brigham and Women's  
08:34:32 2 Hospital in Boston and Associate professor of medicine at  
08:34:32 3 Harvard Medical School. And I'm the executive director of  
08:34:32 4 the Center for Pulmonary Heart Disease and more specifically  
08:34:32 5 the director of the pulmonary vascular disease program at  
08:34:33 6 Brigham and Women's Hospital.

08:34:33 7 Q. What are your responsibilities in these positions?

08:34:33 8 A. So as the executive director, I oversee the broader  
08:34:33 9 pulmonary heart disease program, which includes all aspects  
08:34:33 10 of pulmonary vascular disease and right-heart failure and  
08:34:33 11 oversee eight faculty that work on the program as well as a  
08:34:33 12 large clinical trials and basic research program.

08:34:33 13 Q. Please briefly describe your educational background.

08:34:33 14 A. Undergraduate, I went to GW, George Washington  
08:34:33 15 University, in D.C. and then went on to get a Ph.D. in  
08:34:33 16 anatomy and neuroscience, and then after that, an M.D. at  
08:34:33 17 Yale University where I also did a number of research  
08:34:33 18 fellowships and then all my post-graduate training in  
08:34:33 19 internal medicine, pulmonary, and critical care medicine.

08:34:33 20 Q. And what area of medicine have you been focused on  
08:34:33 21 after medical school and fellowships?

08:34:33 22 A. Again, broadly speaking, I've practiced the full  
08:34:33 23 range of pulmonary and, specifically, critical care medicine  
08:34:33 24 and then more specifically pulmonary vascular disease and  
08:34:33 25 care of patients with pulmonary hypertension.

Waxman - Direct

08:34:33 1 Q. How long have you been treating patients with  
08:34:33 2 pulmonary hypertension?

08:34:33 3 A. About 30 years.

08:34:33 4 Q. And treating those patients, have you used drugs by  
08:34:33 5 inhalation?

08:34:33 6 A. I have, yes.

08:34:33 7 Q. And how many pulmonary hypertension -- and I might  
08:34:33 8 interchangeably use that with just PH for short. Is that  
08:34:33 9 okay with you?

08:34:33 10 A. Yes.

08:34:33 11 Q. How many PH patients do you follow?

08:34:33 12 A. Me personally? About 800 patients.

08:34:33 13 Q. And how many PH patients does the Center for  
08:34:33 14 Pulmonary Heart Disease at the Brigham center does it  
08:34:33 15 follow?

08:34:33 16 A. So, we follow about 2,000 patients with pulmonary  
08:34:33 17 hypertension at the Brigham.

08:34:33 18 Q. Have you been involved in any clinical trials  
08:34:34 19 involving treatments for pulmonary hypertension?

08:34:34 20 A. I have. I mean, over the course of the years, pretty  
08:34:34 21 much any drug that's now approved, we were involved in those  
08:34:34 22 clinical trials. And we currently have about 16 clinical  
08:34:34 23 trials active in our program, of which some are  
08:34:34 24 investigator-initiated but most are industry sponsored.

08:34:34 25 Q. And do some of those involve UT?

Waxman - Direct

08:34:34 1 A. They do, yes.

08:34:34 2 Q. Have you received any awards or honors in the course  
08:34:34 3 of your career?

08:34:34 4 A. I have received some. The most recent probably borne  
08:34:34 5 out of my work in the COVID ICU, the Distinguished Clinician  
08:34:34 6 Award at Brigham.

08:34:34 7 Q. Have you provided a CV in connection with your work  
08:34:34 8 in this case?

08:34:34 9 A. I have, yes.

08:34:34 10 Q. Please turn in your binder to PTX 506, and let me  
08:34:34 11 know when you have that in front of you.

08:34:34 12 A. I have it.

08:34:34 13 Q. Is this an accurate copy of your CV?

08:34:34 14 A. As of September of 2021, it is, yes.

08:34:34 15 MS. KIM: Your Honor, we move PTX 506 into  
08:34:36 16 evidence.

08:34:36 17 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

08:34:37 18 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

08:34:37 19 (PTX Exhibit No. 506 was admitted into  
08:34:38 20 evidence.)

08:34:38 21 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I proffer Dr. Waxman as an  
08:34:40 22 expert in internal medicine pulmonary disease and critical  
08:34:43 23 care medicine and the treatment of pulmonary hypertension,  
08:34:46 24 including by inhalation.

08:34:49 25 MR. DAVIES: No objection.

Waxman - Direct

08:34:51 1 THE COURT: All right. You may proceed.

08:34:52 2 MS. KIM: Thank you.

08:34:54 3 BY MS. KIM:

08:34:54 4 Q. Dr. Waxman, what were you asked to do in this case?

08:34:58 5 A. I was asked to review the '793 patent as well as a  
08:35:01 6 number of materials and provide my opinion as to  
08:35:04 7 infringement and validity of the UTC patent for inhaled  
08:35:09 8 Treprostinil.

08:35:09 9 Q. Have you worked with us to create a set of slides to  
08:35:12 10 help demonstrate your testimony here today?

08:35:14 11 A. I have, yes.

08:35:20 12 Q. And what does this slide show?

08:35:21 13 A. This slide shows the definitions provided by myself  
08:35:26 14 as well as Dr. Hill in regards to the definition of a person  
08:35:31 15 of ordinary skill in the art or a POSA.

08:35:33 16 Q. In your opinion, what is the definition of a person  
08:35:36 17 of ordinary skill in the art?

08:35:36 18 A. My definition is on the left side of that. It  
08:35:43 19 describes someone with a degree in either an M.D. or a Ph.D.  
08:35:47 20 and at least two years of experience in the field as well as  
08:35:53 21 experience with investigation and treatment of pulmonary  
08:35:56 22 hypertension and the development of the potential drug  
08:35:59 23 candidates.

08:36:00 24 Q. Did you apply this definition in connection with your  
08:36:03 25 analysis in this case?

Waxman - Direct

08:36:03 1 A. I did, yes.

08:36:06 2 Q. Dr. Hill used a different definition. Would your  
08:36:08 3 opinions change if you used his definition?

08:36:10 4 A. No.

08:36:11 5 Q. Were you a person of ordinary skill in the art as of  
08:36:14 6 May 2006?

08:36:14 7 A. I was, yes.

08:36:16 8 Q. Please turn to JTX 3 in your binder, and let me know  
08:36:23 9 when you're there.

08:36:23 10 A. I'm there.

08:36:25 11 Q. Do you recognize this document?

08:36:26 12 A. I do, yes.

08:36:29 13 Q. What is it?

08:36:29 14 A. This is the '793 patent.

08:36:32 15 Q. Have you reviewed this patent?

08:36:33 16 A. I have, yes.

08:36:36 17 Q. Can you generally describe the -- what the '793  
08:36:39 18 patent is directed to?

08:36:40 19 A. The '793 patent describes a method of using  
08:36:45 20 Treprostinil as inhaled therapy for the treatment of  
08:36:48 21 patients with pulmonary hypertension.

08:36:50 22 Q. And what was your impression in reading the science  
08:36:54 23 of the patent?

08:36:54 24 A. Well, I think it's very clear that inhaling  
08:36:58 25 Treprostinil results in an effective response, as far as



08:37:03 1 reducing pulmonary artery pressure and reducing pulmonary  
08:37:07 2 vascular resistance, which are the fundamental components of  
08:37:11 3 pulmonary hypertension.

08:37:14 4 Q. And up on the slide, can you explain what we see over  
08:37:20 5 on the left-hand side with respect to the Figure 10.

08:37:23 6 A. Yeah. The -- on the left of this slide shows the  
08:37:27 7 graphic representation of the impact of inhaled Treprostinil  
08:37:31 8 on pulmonary artery pressure in the upper left and the  
08:37:35 9 pulmonary vascular resistance in the lower left compared to  
08:37:38 10 the placebo.

08:37:41 11 Q. What are the asserted claims of the '793 patent in  
08:37:44 12 this case?

08:37:46 13 A. The asserted claims have to do with treatment of  
08:37:50 14 patients -- sorry. We can see them up there on the -- on  
08:37:54 15 the slide. The asserted claims are 1, 4, 6, 7 and 8.

08:37:59 16 Q. What is Claim 1 directed to?

08:38:01 17 A. Claim 1 directs to the treatment of pulmonary  
08:38:05 18 hypertension, specifically inhalational therapy for patients  
08:38:10 19 suffering from pulmonary hypertension, delivered in a  
08:38:13 20 therapeutically effective dose and through an inhalational  
08:38:18 21 device in a single event therapeutically effective dose and  
08:38:24 22 dose range of 15 to 90 micrograms that can be delivered in  
08:38:29 23 one to three breaths.

08:38:31 24 Q. Have you prepared a demonstrative that summarizes the  
08:38:33 25 opinions you'll be providing today?

08:38:35 1 A. Yes.

08:38:37 2 Q. And what are they?

08:38:38 3 A. As you can see up there, claim 1 of the '793 does  
08:38:43 4 provide an adequate written description of the invention  
08:38:47 5 such that the '793 patent enables those of us who are POSAs  
08:38:51 6 to be able to make the invention, and that Liquidia's  
08:38:55 7 accused product, the Liquidia '861, infringes on all aspects  
08:39:00 8 of the asserted claims of the patent.

08:39:03 9 Q. Thank you, Dr. Waxman. Before we get into your  
08:39:06 10 opinions regarding validity and infringement of the patent,  
08:39:08 11 I want to back up briefly and just provide some background  
08:39:11 12 as to the state of the art in May of 2006. What is  
08:39:14 13 pulmonary hypertension?

08:39:15 14 A. So, in the simplest definition is pulmonary  
08:39:19 15 hypertension simply describes an increased pressure in the  
08:39:23 16 blood vessels of the lung and then more specifically, we  
08:39:27 17 think of it as a complex disease that involves remodeling,  
08:39:34 18 and it's really a pathologic process that involves  
08:39:37 19 progressive change to the blood vessels of the lungs so they  
08:39:41 20 become thicker and stiffer. As they become thicker and  
08:39:44 21 stiffer, they increases the resistance to blood flow through  
08:39:49 22 the lung, and that results in increasing pressure and  
08:39:51 23 increasing pulmonary vascular resistance, and, ultimately,  
08:39:54 24 that leads to dysfunction of the right ventricle of the  
08:39:58 25 heart and, ultimately, failure of the right ventricle. And

08:40:01 1 that's what leads to the death of the patient.

08:40:05 2 Q. And are there different forms or classifications of  
08:40:08 3 pulmonary hypertension?

08:40:08 4 A. There are. I like to think of it in terms of pre and  
08:40:14 5 postcapillary disease because that really gets to the  
08:40:18 6 pathology, the pathophysiology, and the pathogenesis. And  
08:40:20 7 when we think about precapillary, we're really talking about  
08:40:23 8 all that remodeling that I was referring to in the pulmonary  
08:40:27 9 arterial bed.

08:40:28 10 There is postcapillary disease as well that we  
08:40:31 11 can breakdown into isolated postcapillary, which is really a  
08:40:34 12 passive drive for the pressure in the pulmonary arterial bed  
08:40:38 13 because of the increased pressure in the left heart. And  
08:40:41 14 then there is a mixed picture. As long as you have  
08:40:45 15 long-standing, untreated postcapillary disease. It drives  
08:40:49 16 remodeling of the pulmonary arterial bed so you end up with  
08:40:53 17 a combined pre- and post-capillary picture.

08:40:56 18 And then there are the groupings which the  
08:41:00 19 groups we think -- what used to be called WHO now called  
08:41:07 20 WSDH are, really, an arbitrary approach to categorizing the  
08:41:10 21 disease based on associated or comorbid conditions that go  
08:41:15 22 along with pulmonary hypertension.

08:41:17 23 Q. With respect to the WHO categories that you just  
08:41:21 24 mentioned, do all five of those categories exhibit elevated  
08:41:27 25 blood pressure as you just mentioned with respect to your

Waxman - Direct

08:41:29 1 understanding of pulmonary hypertension?

08:41:31 2 A. So that is the unifying theme for all of them to call  
08:41:34 3 them pulmonary hypertension. They all require a hemodynamic  
08:41:38 4 assessment that shows elevated pressure in the pulmonary  
08:41:41 5 arteries.

08:41:42 6 Q. And earlier, you said that the center -- excuse me --  
08:41:45 7 center has over 2,000 pulmonary hypertension patients.  
08:41:49 8 What's the breakdown of the forms for those patients?

08:41:52 9 A. So for us, to call a patient or at least diagnose a  
08:41:57 10 patient with pulmonary hypertension requires that they've  
08:42:00 11 had a right-heart catheterization. An echo is a good  
08:42:05 12 screening tool, but it's not a diagnosis. Once we do it,  
08:42:08 13 make the diagnosis, I would say our breakdown in our program  
08:42:12 14 is around 25 to 28 percent of the patients will have what's  
08:42:16 15 called group one disease. Probably about 35 to 40 percent  
08:42:22 16 of the patients will have group two disease. And of those,  
08:42:25 17 probably about two-thirds of them will have combined pre-  
08:42:29 18 and postcapillary pulmonary hypertension. And then probably  
08:42:33 19 about 25 percent of our patients will have group three  
08:42:36 20 disease. Probably less than eight percent will have group  
08:42:40 21 four disease. And the remainder will have group five, which  
08:42:44 22 is really kind of a catchall basin for the rest of the  
08:42:47 23 patients.

08:42:48 24 Q. And was that breakdown accurate also back in the year  
08:42:51 25 2006?

08:42:52 1 A. Yes.

08:42:56 2 Q. Do you also have patients with mixed groups, such as,  
08:42:58 3 like, group one and two or group one and group three?

08:43:03 4 A. Yeah, I think that illustrates the shortcomings of  
08:43:06 5 the groupings, that it's pretty rare to find a patient that  
08:43:09 6 just fits into one group. And I think that's one of the  
08:43:13 7 drivers for our current investigation, like PVDOMICS, that  
08:43:17 8 Dr. Hill and I were both involved in where we have patients  
08:43:21 9 that have group one plus group two, group one plus group  
08:43:24 10 three. If you have a patient with connective tissue disease  
08:43:27 11 who smoked for 20 or 30 years, they're likely to have a  
08:43:31 12 mixed picture. Somebody develops a malignancy, they could  
08:43:35 13 end up with group five plus group one. So it's kind of a  
08:43:38 14 whole mix and match of different groupings.

08:43:42 15 Q. And were there any treatments for pulmonary  
08:43:46 16 hypertension as of May 2006?

08:43:47 17 A. There were treatments. It was somewhat limited at  
08:43:51 18 that time, but, yes.

08:43:53 19 Q. What were they?

08:43:53 20 A. We can see them on the slide. They're really three  
08:43:57 21 targeted pathways. The prostacyclin pathway, which at the  
08:44:02 22 time we had three treatments -- three drugs available,  
08:44:06 23 Flolan or epoprostenol was the first agent approved, and it  
08:44:11 24 was -- I mean, it was a great drug and remains a great drug.  
08:44:15 25 It's just it's very cumbersome. It's a very short

Waxman - Direct

08:44:19 1 half-life, about two to six minutes, so it has to be given  
08:44:22 2 intravenously through a tunneled catheter, so an IV catheter  
08:44:26 3 that goes into the -- into the heart itself and delivered by  
08:44:30 4 an external pump. It was cumbersome for the patient, and it  
08:44:34 5 was also not stable at room temperature, so it had to be  
08:44:37 6 kept on ice. And the other important thing, because of the  
08:44:41 7 short half-life, the patient had disruption of delivery, it  
08:44:46 8 could be a medical emergency, and it's life-threatening.

08:44:49 9           Following that, I like to think of Treprostinil  
08:44:52 10 or Remodulin there as the second generation prostacyclin  
08:44:57 11 which was, I think a big step forward, in part because of  
08:45:01 12 safety because the half-life is longer at four and a half  
08:45:03 13 hours. And it's also stable at room temperature. So it  
08:45:06 14 made life easier for the patient but also safer.

08:45:10 15           And then Ventavis or iloprost was an inhaled  
08:45:14 16 formulation, which for us, was not particularly helpful  
08:45:19 17 because patients had to take it six to nine times a day, so  
08:45:21 18 not many of our patients were compliant. And also we had a  
08:45:24 19 lot of side effect issues with it.

08:45:26 20           And then on top of that, we had two oral drugs,  
08:45:31 21 bosentan, which is an endothelin antagonist and sildenafil,  
08:45:35 22 which was, essentially, repurposed Viagra, which is a  
08:45:43 23 phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitor.

08:45:46 24 Q.       And we're talking about, again, the classifications  
08:45:50 25 or the forms of PH, what forms can Treprostinil treat?

Waxman - Direct

08:45:53 1 A. Well, we would use it for any form of pulmonary  
08:45:59 2 arterial or precapillary disease.

08:46:03 3 Q. And in May of 2006, were there any Treprostinil  
08:46:06 4 therapies that were provided by inhalation?

08:46:10 5 A. Not at that time, no.

08:46:14 6 Q. Let's turn to your written description opinions  
08:46:18 7 first. Have you prepared a summary slide regarding your  
08:46:21 8 opinions on written description?

08:46:22 9 A. Yes.

08:46:25 10 Q. What are they?

08:46:25 11 A. Well, I think the '793 patent provides a clear and  
08:46:31 12 appropriate description of the invention.

08:46:35 13 Q. And we just talked about kind of the background as to  
08:46:38 14 what pulmonary hypertension was. In 2006, what would a POSA  
08:46:43 15 have understood the term "pulmonary hypertension" to mean in  
08:46:49 16 the context of this patent?

08:46:50 17 A. Well, in the context of this patent, based on the  
08:46:52 18 examples that are in the patent, it's clear that it would  
08:46:55 19 include pulmonary arterial hypertension or precapillary  
08:47:02 20 pulmonary hypertension, as there are a number of  
08:47:03 21 descriptions of various forms of precapillary disease.

08:47:06 22 Q. Is there any description in the patent that supports  
08:47:09 23 your opinion?

08:47:10 24 A. Well, there's a description of treating patients with  
08:47:14 25 idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension which would fit

Waxman - Direct

08:47:17 1 into group one disease. There's description of patients  
08:47:21 2 with what they term in there PAH or pulmonary arterial  
08:47:27 3 hypertension other, which would overlap with group five  
08:47:29 4 disease. There's also a description of treating patients  
08:47:32 5 with chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension, which is  
08:47:37 6 really defining group four disease. And then there's a  
08:47:41 7 description in there of treating patients with pulmonary  
08:47:45 8 hypertension and pulmonary fibrosis, which, again, is  
08:47:48 9 another form of precapillary pulmonary arterial disease that  
08:47:52 10 would fit into group three disease.

08:47:54 11 Q. Does this study that you're explaining right now  
08:47:57 12 include group two patients?

08:47:58 13 A. Not specifically, no.

08:48:03 14 Q. Okay. But would a POSA reading this study have  
08:48:06 15 understood that they can apply it to group two patients?

08:48:10 16 A. So again. With group two. We have two different  
08:48:13 17 subsets. We do have patients that who develop pulmonary  
08:48:17 18 arterial disease and remodel their pulmonary arterial beds,  
08:48:20 19 and in those patients, we would consider using a pulmonary  
08:48:23 20 vasodilator like Treprostinil.

08:48:26 21 Q. Do you recall Dr. Hill's testimony that a POSA would  
08:48:29 22 not have understood the inventors were in possession of a  
08:48:33 23 method of treating pulmonary hypertension for at least  
08:48:35 24 isolated postcapillary pulmonary hypertension patients?

08:48:39 25 A. Yes.



Waxman - Direct

08:48:40 1 Q. Do you agree with his opinion?

08:48:42 2 A. Well, I would agree that in purely isolated  
08:48:47 3 postcapillary disease, yeah, we would not consider any  
08:48:50 4 pulmonary vasodilator in that setting because the mainstay  
08:48:53 5 of treatment is a diuretic.

08:48:55 6 Q. Are there other forms or subclasses in group two that  
08:48:59 7 one would be able to treat with?

08:49:02 8 A. So for those patients who have a remodel pulmonary  
08:49:05 9 arterial bed, so combined pre- and postcapillary disease, we  
08:49:10 10 would consider using pulmonary vasodilator therapy.

08:49:16 11 Q. Okay. So not all forms of group two patients fall  
08:49:20 12 under this specific isolated postcapillary PH Dr. Hill was  
08:49:25 13 talking about?

08:49:26 14 A. That's correct, no.

08:49:28 15 Q. And as of May 2006, would you have been able to treat  
08:49:33 16 a patient with any form of PH based only on FDA approval?

08:49:37 17 A. Well, at the time, FDA had only approved those drugs  
08:49:40 18 that we already reviewed for only group one disease. But, I  
08:49:46 19 think as clinicians, we often will make use of those drugs  
08:49:51 20 in an off-label approach when it makes sense  
08:49:54 21 pathophysiologically.

08:49:56 22 Q. So would you have also been able to treat patients  
08:50:00 23 that have pre- and post-capillary that would be classified  
08:50:04 24 as pre- and post-capillary group two Dr. Hill mentioned?

08:50:08 25 A. So for the combined pre- and post-capillary disease,

08:50:11 1 yes.

08:50:13 2 Q. So reading Claim 1 in the context of the patent,  
08:50:16 3 would a POSA, in your opinion, know whether isolated  
08:50:20 4 postcapillary PH is within the scope of the claims?

08:50:25 5 A. I think a POSA would understand that isolated  
08:50:28 6 postcapillary disease, again, would be treated with a  
08:50:32 7 diuretic and not a pulmonary vasodilator.

08:50:35 8 Q. As of May 2006, would a POSA have understood that  
08:50:40 9 prostacyclins would not be -- would not likely work for  
08:50:43 10 isolated postcapillary PH patients?

08:50:46 11 A. Yes. I mean, essentially, any pulmonary vasodilator  
08:50:51 12 would probably not be needed.

08:50:53 13 Q. Thank you. Let's turn to enablement. Have you  
08:50:59 14 prepared a slide of your opinions on enablement?

08:51:02 15 A. Yes.

08:51:03 16 Q. What are your opinions -- what are your -- at a high  
08:51:06 17 level, what are your opinions on enablement?

08:51:08 18 A. So, I think that the information provided in the  
08:51:11 19 patent provides plenty of information to enable someone  
08:51:15 20 who's skilled in the art to be able to make the invention.

08:51:20 21 Q. And what's the basis for your opinions?

08:51:24 22 A. Well, in the examples that are in the patent, there's  
08:51:27 23 plenty of information as far as the patient population to  
08:51:31 24 treat, how to treat, as far as a single-event therapeutic  
08:51:36 25 dosing that results in improved hemodynamics. There's

Waxman - Direct

08:51:39 1 information about delivering it as an inhaled therapy, and  
08:51:43 2 there's information, I think very importantly, on dosing to  
08:51:48 3 get that single-event therapeutic dose.

08:51:51 4 Q. And do you recall Dr. Hill opining that, once again,  
08:51:54 5 a POSA or the patent is not enabled because -- he used the  
08:51:59 6 same rationale of isolated postcapillary group two PH  
08:52:03 7 patients not being enabled with the description in this  
08:52:07 8 patent?

08:52:08 9 Do you recall that?

08:52:08 10 A. I recall that, yes.

08:52:09 11 Q. Do you agree with his opinions?

08:52:11 12 A. Well, I think, again, as I've said, I don't agree in  
08:52:15 13 the sense that we wouldn't treat a postcapillary disease  
08:52:18 14 with a pulmonary vasodilator of any kind.

08:52:24 15 Q. And does the patent support your opinions?

08:52:27 16 A. I think it does. Like I said, there's a description  
08:52:31 17 in there of treating idiopathic or group one, group five  
08:52:36 18 with PH other, chronic thromboembolic, group four, pulmonary  
08:52:42 19 fibrosis, group three, and if we look at that table up  
08:52:44 20 there, it does describe pulmonary hypertension, but you can  
08:52:48 21 see there's no pulmonary capillary wedge pressure listed  
08:52:51 22 anywhere, so we really don't know if anyone had combined  
08:52:55 23 pre- or postcapillary PH.

08:52:57 24 Q. Do you recall Dr. Hill also opined that in 2006 there  
08:53:01 25 was no evidence that prostacyclins could treat any group two

08:53:05 1 patients?

08:53:06 2 A. Well, I would say there was certainly no published  
08:53:09 3 evidence, but I think, again, as clinicians, we often use  
08:53:13 4 medications that are available in an off-label approach.  
08:53:16 5 And we were certainly using inhaled epoprostenol in the  
08:53:20 6 hospital for those very purposes.

08:53:23 7 Q. So, in your opinion, would a POSA reading the claims  
08:53:26 8 in the context of the patent be able to make and use the  
08:53:30 9 invention without undue experimentation?

08:53:32 10 A. Yeah, I think there's plenty of information in the  
08:53:34 11 patent to allow us to move forward to use the invention.

08:53:39 12 Q. And would a POSA also understand that they could not  
08:53:41 13 use the claimed invention for isolated postcapillary PH  
08:53:46 14 patients?

08:53:47 15 A. I think that's just very simple pathophysiology that  
08:53:50 16 all of us learn about and would practice.

08:53:55 17 Q. And do you recall Dr. Hill's testimony when he said  
08:53:58 18 it would be virtually unpredictable that a POSA would have  
08:54:02 19 found developing inhaled Treprostinil to treat group two  
08:54:06 20 patients?

08:54:07 21 A. I actually would disagree. I think it's predictable  
08:54:11 22 in the sense that if you have a patient with precapillary  
08:54:15 23 disease, you can see improvement upon treating that patient.  
08:54:20 24 So I would disagree in the combined pre- and postcapillary  
08:54:25 25 disease.

Waxman - Direct

08:54:26 1 Q. And would it also have been predictable that one  
08:54:28 2 cannot treat for isolated postcapillary PH patients?

08:54:32 3 A. Well, I think it would be consistent with our  
08:54:37 4 understanding of pathophysiology that we would not treat an  
08:54:41 5 isolated postcapillary disease patient.

08:54:45 6 Q. Dr. Waxman, can you summarize your opinions to the  
08:54:48 7 Court with respect to validity.

08:54:49 8 A. Yeah, I think that it's clear to me, in reviewing the  
08:54:53 9 patent, that it does provide adequate written description of  
08:54:58 10 the invention as the inventors put forth. I also think that  
08:55:03 11 it enables a POSA to be able to make the invention and make  
08:55:08 12 use of it.

08:55:10 13 Q. Thank you, Dr. Waxman. Let's turn to your  
08:55:13 14 infringement opinions next. Have you provided a slide  
08:55:15 15 briefly summarizing the opinions that you're going to be  
08:55:17 16 providing on infringement?

08:55:18 17 A. I have, yes.

08:55:19 18 Q. And what are they?

08:55:20 19 A. That the accused product, the Liquidia 861, infringes  
08:55:27 20 on Claims 1, 4, 6, 7 and 8.

08:55:31 21 Q. What is Liquidia's accused product?

08:55:34 22 A. Liquidia 861 is -- is a dry-powder formulation of  
08:55:39 23 Treprostinil for inhalation.

08:55:42 24 Q. And is that LIQ861?

08:55:45 25 A. Yes.

Waxman - Direct

08:55:46 1 Q. Does it also go by the brand name of Yutrepia?

08:55:49 2 A. It does.

08:55:50 3 Q. And how did you determine or analyze whether

08:55:55 4 Liquidia's LIQ861 infringes the asserted claims?

08:56:01 5 A. I reviewed a number of materials, including several  
08:56:04 6 package inserts, the new drug application that was submitted  
08:56:08 7 to the FDA, as well as instructional -- what do you call  
08:56:13 8 it -- inserts that were -- would have been provided to  
08:56:16 9 patients and clinicians.

08:56:19 10 Q. Thank you. Let's start with Claim 1.

08:56:21 11 Please turn to PTX 134 in your binder.

08:56:30 12 A. Okay.

08:56:30 13 Q. Let me know when you're there.

08:56:33 14 A. I am.

08:56:34 15 Q. Do you recognize this document?

08:56:34 16 A. I do. This is a package insert that was revised in  
08:56:38 17 April of 2021.

08:56:43 18 Q. Is this one of the documents that you reviewed in  
08:56:45 19 connection with your analysis?

08:56:46 20 A. It is, yes.

08:56:49 21 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move PTX 134 into  
08:56:53 22 evidence.

08:56:54 23 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

08:56:54 24 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

08:56:56 25 (PTX Exhibit No. 134 was admitted into

08:56:56 1 evidence.)

08:56:57 2 MS. KIM: Thank you.

08:56:57 3 BY MS. KIM:

08:56:59 4 Q. Can you explain to the Court how this document  
08:57:00 5 relates to your opinions on infringements.

08:57:02 6 A. Sure. I mean, there are a number of things in here  
08:57:05 7 that clearly infringe on the patent. If you look at  
08:57:09 8 indications and usage, it talks about Treprostinil as a --  
08:57:14 9 an inhalation powder prostacyclin vasodilator indicated for  
08:57:20 10 the treatment of pulmonary arterial hypertension, and it  
08:57:24 11 describes patients suffering from pulmonary hypertension  
08:57:27 12 based on a functional Class II through III symptoms. We can  
08:57:30 13 look at the dosage and administration and, again, it talks  
08:57:33 14 about oral inhalation. And it also talks about single-event  
08:57:41 15 dosing and inhaling it in one to two breaths. It also lists  
08:57:46 16 dosages there in the range of 15 to 90 micrograms. And  
08:57:51 17 that's also reiterated on the next two pages and throughout  
08:57:58 18 the document.

08:58:00 19 Q. And can you walk us through this demonstrative that  
08:58:02 20 you prepared.

08:58:06 21 A. Sure. This demonstrative illustrates from the  
08:58:09 22 package insert what I just reviewed as far as this being an  
08:58:14 23 inhalational treatment for pulmonary hypertension, a  
08:58:18 24 dry-powder inhaler, single-event dosing and therapeutically  
08:58:23 25 effective dosing based on those dose ranges that are shown

Waxman - Direct

08:58:26 1 and delivered in one to three breaths.

08:58:29 2 Q. And so what does the April 2021 package insert  
08:58:34 3 demonstrate with respect to Claim 1?

08:58:36 4 A. That it infringes on all of the asserted claims  
08:58:38 5 within Claim 1.

08:58:40 6 Q. Have you reviewed any other versions of the label or  
08:58:43 7 the package insert?

08:58:44 8 A. I have, yes.

08:58:45 9 Q. Please turn to PTX 469 in your binder.

08:58:52 10 A. Okay.

08:58:53 11 Q. Do you recognize this document?

08:58:55 12 A. I do.

08:58:58 13 Q. Is this one of the other versions of the labels or  
08:59:00 14 package inserts that you were referring to?

08:59:02 15 A. Yes. This is a revised package insert from November  
08:59:06 16 of 2021.

08:59:10 17 Q. Did you review this November 2021 package insert in  
08:59:14 18 connection with your analysis?

08:59:14 19 A. I did, yes.

08:59:17 20 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move PTX 469 into  
08:59:19 21 evidence.

08:59:19 22 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

08:59:20 23 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
08:59:22 24 objection.

08:59:22 25 (PTX Exhibit No. 469 was admitted into



08:59:23 1 evidence.)

08:59:23 2 BY MS. KIM:

08:59:24 3 Q. Dr. Waxman, can you explain to the Court how the  
08:59:27 4 November 2021 package insert relates to your opinions?

08:59:30 5 A. Yeah, essentially, for the same reasons that I've  
08:59:34 6 just went over for the April insert. This says pretty much  
08:59:39 7 the same thing, as far as this being Treprostinil inhalation  
08:59:43 8 powder, oral inhalation for the treatment of pulmonary  
08:59:47 9 hypertension for patients suffering from pulmonary  
08:59:49 10 hypertension, again, based on functional class description.  
08:59:53 11 Describes a single-event dose. It describes a  
08:59:56 12 therapeutically effective dose. It also describes providing  
09:00:00 13 it in one to three breaths.

09:00:03 14 Q. And can you explain this slide that we see up on the  
09:00:07 15 screen.

09:00:07 16 A. Again, the same thing I just went over, that it  
09:00:11 17 overlaps with each of -- of the claims in Claim 1. Again,  
09:00:16 18 treating pulmonary hypertension by inhalation with single,  
09:00:22 19 therapeutically effective single-event dosing and dosing in  
09:00:27 20 the range of 15 to 90 micrograms and delivered in one to  
09:00:32 21 three breaths.

09:00:32 22 Q. So what does the November 2021 package insert  
09:00:35 23 demonstrate with respect to your analysis of Claim 1?

09:00:38 24 A. That the asserted product, the accused product,  
09:00:43 25 Liquidia 861, infringes on all aspects of Claim 1.

Waxman - Direct

09:00:47 1 Q. Please turn to DTX 113 in your binder.

09:00:50 2 A. Which one?

09:00:51 3 Q. DTX 113.

09:00:55 4 A. DTX.

09:00:55 5 Q. Let me know when you're there.

09:00:57 6 A. Okay.

09:01:01 7 Q. Do you recognize this document?

09:01:02 8 A. I do, yes.

09:01:04 9 Q. What is it?

09:01:05 10 A. This is the teaching instructions that are for  
09:01:13 11 Liquidia 861 Treprostinil -- Treprostinil inhalational

09:01:18 12 powder. And this is intended to instruct patients,

09:01:23 13 clinicians, providers on how to use the dry-powder inhaler.

09:01:27 14 Q. Is this also one of the documents that you reviewed  
09:01:29 15 in your analysis?

09:01:30 16 A. Yes.

09:01:31 17 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move DTX 113 into  
09:01:34 18 evidence.

09:01:34 19 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

09:01:35 20 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

09:01:37 21 (DTX Exhibit No. 113 was admitted into  
09:01:38 22 evidence.)

09:01:38 23 BY MS. KIM:

09:01:39 24 Q. Can you explain to the Court how the instructions for  
09:01:40 25 use relate to your opinions.

Waxman - Direct

09:01:42 1 A. Well, this document describes Treprostinil as an  
09:01:46 2 inhalational powder. Again, it talks about a dry-powder  
09:01:50 3 inhaler for oral inhalation. It talks about the number of  
09:01:54 4 breaths being two breaths, so within the one to three  
09:01:59 5 breaths. It also talks about a single-event dosing and the  
09:02:03 6 dose range overlapping with the 15- to 90-microgram doses.  
09:02:08 7 And it has pictures that actually illustrate the dry-powder  
09:02:11 8 inhaler quite clearly on how to use it.

09:02:16 9 Q. And can you explain what this slide shows on the  
09:02:18 10 screen.

09:02:19 11 A. The slide goes over what I just discussed, as far as  
09:02:23 12 Treprostinil inhalation powder to treat pulmonary  
09:02:27 13 hypertension. It also shows a dosing chart with the doses  
09:02:31 14 that overlap with the 15 to 90 micrograms. It shows the  
09:02:36 15 construct of the dry-powder inhaler and that it is dosed two  
09:02:44 16 breaths per capsule.

09:02:47 17 Q. Thank you.

09:02:48 18 Please turn to PTX 573 in your binder.

09:02:52 19 A. PTX 573?

09:02:54 20 Q. 573. Let me know when you're there?

09:03:00 21 A. I'm there.

09:03:00 22 Q. Do you recognize this document?

09:03:01 23 A. I do, yes.

09:03:02 24 Q. What is it?

09:03:03 25 A. This is part of the new drug application that was

Waxman - Direct

09:03:08 1 submitted by Liquidia regarding Liquidia 861 to the FDA in  
09:03:13 2 2020.

09:03:14 3 Q. Is this also one of the documents that you reviewed?

09:03:16 4 A. It is, yes.

09:03:18 5 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move PTX 573 into  
09:03:20 6 evidence.

09:03:21 7 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

09:03:23 8 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

09:03:24 9 (PTX Exhibit No. 573 was admitted into  
09:03:25 10 evidence.)

09:03:25 11 BY MS. KIM:

09:03:25 12 Q. Dr. Waxman, can you explain how this section of the  
09:03:28 13 NDA informed your opinions.

09:03:30 14 A. Yeah. This is a product overview that describes a  
09:03:33 15 lot of the features of the product and specifically goes  
09:03:36 16 into it being a treatment for pulmonary hypertension, that  
09:03:40 17 it's Treprostinil inhalational powder. That it's a  
09:03:44 18 dry-powder inhaler. It's inhaled. It talks about the  
09:03:49 19 therapeutically effective single-event dosing. It talks  
09:03:52 20 about the dosing. And it also talks about the number of  
09:03:56 21 breaths being within the range of one to three.

09:04:01 22 Q. And in this NDA section, what did Liquidia represent  
09:04:07 23 to the FDA with respect to therapeutically effective?

09:04:10 24 A. It -- you mean as far as the -- it -- it talks about  
09:04:18 25 therapeutically effective single-event dosing using the dose

Waxman - Direct

09:04:22 1 ranges that we've already reviewed of 15 to 90 micrograms.

09:04:26 2 Q. And did they rely on any data for showing efficacy?

09:04:29 3 A. So, a lot of the comparative data is based on  
09:04:33 4 comparing the Liquidia product to TYVASO, which is an  
09:04:38 5 identical molecule.

09:04:40 6 Q. And can you explain what this slide shows.

09:04:43 7 A. This slide just reviews what I just went over as far  
09:04:47 8 as the -- the components within this document, the NDA,  
09:04:53 9 that, again, describes Treprostinil as an inhalational  
09:04:57 10 therapy inhalational powder via dry-powder inhaler for the  
09:05:02 11 treatment of hypertension and that it is a single-event  
09:05:09 12 dosing through that dry-powder inhaler and also reviews the  
09:05:13 13 comparative safety data for TYVASO and the one to two  
09:05:19 14 breaths as a single event.

09:05:23 15 Q. Thank you. Please turn to PTX 1213 in your binder.

09:05:29 16 A. Okay.

09:05:31 17 Q. Do you recognize this document?

09:05:32 18 A. I do, yes.

09:05:34 19 Q. What is it?

09:05:34 20 A. This was a paper that was published in Vascular  
09:05:39 21 Pharmacology by Roscigno, et al., that is comparing the  
09:05:45 22 bioavailability, which is a measure of certain aspects of  
09:05:48 23 the pharmacology of inhaled Treprostinil, and specifically  
09:05:52 24 they were comparing the Liquidia 861 version of inhaled  
09:05:56 25 Treprostinil to TYVASO, and showing that, as expected, since

Waxman - Direct

09:06:01 1 the molecules are identical, that the uptake and  
09:06:04 2 bioavailability after a single-event therapeutically  
09:06:08 3 effective dose is administered that they would have the same  
09:06:11 4 bioavailability.

09:06:13 5 Q. And did you review this document?

09:06:14 6 A. Yes.

09:06:16 7 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move PTX 1213 into  
09:06:19 8 evidence.

09:06:20 9 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

09:06:21 10 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
09:06:22 11 objection.

09:06:24 12 (PTX Exhibit No. 1213 was admitted into  
09:06:24 13 evidence.)

09:06:24 14 BY MS. KIM:

09:06:26 15 Q. Can you explain in a little more detail what this  
09:06:28 16 publication shows or demonstrates.

09:06:30 17 A. Yeah. So like I had just kind of rolled into there,  
09:06:36 18 this is a -- an assessment of bioavailability, which  
09:06:40 19 measures the -- kind of the uptake and the drug that's  
09:06:43 20 available for having a therapeutic effect. If you provide  
09:06:48 21 Liquidia 861, it works exactly the same way as TYVASO as far  
09:06:52 22 as that uptake in bioavailability using a single-event  
09:06:57 23 therapeutic dosing that you will see the same  
09:07:00 24 bioavailability as you would with TYVASO.

09:07:04 25 Q. And did you prepare a slide that summarizes those

09:07:08 1 opinions?

09:07:10 2 A. I did, yes.

09:07:11 3 Q. And can you explain what this slide shows.

09:07:14 4 A. So this slide, again, shows that we're talking about  
09:07:18 5 Treprostinil as an inhaled treatment for pulmonary  
09:07:22 6 hypertension, and specifically a dry-powder inhaler,  
09:07:26 7 comparing it to TYVASO and equivalent therapeutically  
09:07:32 8 effective single-event dosing. And that, again, it shows  
09:07:35 9 the same bioavailability and safety profile as TYVASO.

09:07:41 10 Q. Now, bioavailability isn't necessarily the same thing  
09:07:44 11 or identical to therapeutic effectiveness; right?

09:07:47 12 A. No, therapeutically effectiveness speaks to the  
09:07:52 13 effect of the drug on target organ. Bioavailability simply  
09:07:56 14 refers to the uptake of the drug.

09:07:58 15 Q. Would a POSA, though, be able to take the  
09:08:02 16 bioavailability information and infer any information with  
09:08:05 17 respect to efficacy?

09:08:06 18 A. Well, there's two different questions.  
09:08:11 19 Bioavailability simply speaks to the pharmacology, and  
09:08:14 20 therapeutically effectiveness speaks to the effect of the  
09:08:17 21 drug on the target organ, which, in this case, the target  
09:08:21 22 organ being the pulmonary vasculature the pulmonary arterial  
09:08:25 23 side of that vascular and the ability to dilate the vessels,  
09:08:29 24 reduce the pulmonary artery pressure, and reduce the  
09:08:32 25 pulmonary vascular resistance.

Waxman - Direct

09:08:34 1 Q. Could one expect for that to translate into  
09:08:38 2 therapeutic efficacy?

09:08:38 3 A. Well, that would speak to therapeutically effective  
09:08:41 4 dosing when you see a hemodynamic response. Yes.

09:08:45 5 Q. So, I want to briefly talk about one of the  
09:08:47 6 limitations in Claim 1, a therapeutically effective  
09:08:51 7 single-event dose. Can you explain to the Court what this  
09:08:54 8 term means.

09:08:55 9 A. So, a single event therapeutically effective dose  
09:08:59 10 refers to providing an effective dose of the drug in a  
09:09:05 11 single sitting.

09:09:07 12 Q. And in your opinion, can a single-event dose be  
09:09:10 13 therapeutically effective?

09:09:11 14 A. Well, especially in the case where we're talking  
09:09:14 15 about a hemodynamic disease, you want to see a  
09:09:17 16 therapeutically effective dose cause a positive change in  
09:09:22 17 those hemodynamics. So any anything -- a therapeutically  
09:09:26 18 effective dose should cause a reduction in pulmonary artery  
09:09:29 19 pressure and cause a reduction in pulmonary vascular  
09:09:32 20 resistance, and one would expect then that that hemodynamic  
09:09:35 21 effect would translate into a patient feeling better, doing  
09:09:39 22 more, and probably living longer.

09:09:43 23 Q. Do you recall Dr. Hill's opinions in his expert  
09:09:46 24 report regarding what "therapeutic effective" means?

09:09:50 25 A. I do, yes.



Waxman - Direct

09:09:51 1 Q. What are his opinions, to your understanding?

09:09:53 2 A. His opinions are that a therapeutically effective  
09:09:56 3 dose should make a patient feel better, do more, and live  
09:10:00 4 longer.

09:10:01 5 Q. Do you agree with Dr. Hill's opinions?

09:10:03 6 A. Well, I think those opinions are taken from an FDA  
09:10:06 7 mandate that came down, especially in pulmonary hypertension  
09:10:10 8 clinical trial development, where the goal of these drugs  
09:10:14 9 are to make patients feel better, live -- and do more and  
09:10:18 10 live longer. But that applies to a clinical trial.

09:10:21 11 But when we're talking about the clinically  
09:10:23 12 effective dose in a hemodynamic disease, it has to be able  
09:10:28 13 to improve the hemodynamics, which then would translate into  
09:10:32 14 all of those features: a patient feeling better, doing  
09:10:35 15 more, and living longer.

09:10:37 16 Q. Even if the Court were to agree with Dr. Hill's  
09:10:40 17 opinion with respect to therapeutically effective, in your  
09:10:45 18 opinion, does Liquidia's LIQ861 product still meet this  
09:10:49 19 claim limitation?

09:10:50 20 A. Yes. I mean, it's been compared nicely to TYVASO and  
09:10:55 21 has the same -- same therapeutically effective single-event  
09:11:00 22 dosing.

09:11:01 23 Q. Even just taking it once?

09:11:02 24 A. It -- taking it once impacts the hemodynamics in a  
09:11:06 25 positive way that would translate into those three features

Waxman - Direct

09:11:10 1 that I mentioned, feeling better, doing more, and living  
09:11:12 2 longer.

09:11:14 3 Q. Thank you Dr. Waxman.

09:11:15 4 Let's move on to Claim 4. Can you explain to  
09:11:19 5 the Court what the basis for your opinions with respect to  
09:11:22 6 Claim 4 are.

09:11:23 7 A. Well, Claim 4 describes an inhalation device as a  
09:11:29 8 dry-powder inhaler. And I think it's very clear from all  
09:11:32 9 the documents we just reviewed that Liquidia 861 is a  
09:11:38 10 dry-powder inhaler.

09:11:40 11 Q. And I think you have a slide on that. Can you  
09:11:42 12 explain some of the highlights from the documents that you  
09:11:45 13 looked at right now with respect to Claim 4.

09:11:47 14 A. Yeah. As I said, all of the documents describe --  
09:11:52 15 especially the package inserts and the instructions to the  
09:11:55 16 patient -- specifically describe a dry-powder oral  
09:12:00 17 inhalation and provide it has a dry-powder inhaler, and it  
09:12:06 18 also speaks to the single-event dosing.

09:12:09 19 Q. Thank you. Let's move on to dependent Claim 6.

09:12:12 20 Can you explain the basis for your opinions.

09:12:15 21 A. Yeah. Essentially, the same as Claim 4, in that this  
09:12:18 22 is simply talking about the administration as a powder, and  
09:12:23 23 we've just reviewed how it's not only a powder, it is a  
09:12:26 24 dry-powder delivered through a dry-powder inhaler, and it is  
09:12:31 25 obviously Treprostinil.

Waxman - Direct

09:12:33 1 Q. Thank you.

09:12:34 2 Let's move on to dependent Claim 7. Can you  
09:12:37 3 explain the basis for your opinions.

09:12:39 4 A. Yes. So, here Claim 7 describes the particle size  
09:12:44 5 being less than 5 microns in diameter.

09:12:51 6 Q. Can you turn to PTX 20 in your binder. And let me  
09:12:55 7 know when you're there.

09:13:07 8 A. Okay.

09:13:09 9 Q. Do you recognize this document?

09:13:10 10 A. I do, yes.

09:13:12 11 Q. What is it?

09:13:12 12 A. It's -- so, this was another part of the new drug  
09:13:15 13 application that was submitted to the FDA by Liquidia  
09:13:20 14 regarding Liquidia 861 and submitted in 2020.

09:13:24 15 Q. Did you review this document?

09:13:25 16 A. I did, yes.

09:13:30 17 MS. KIM: Your Honor, I move PTX 20 into  
09:13:31 18 evidence.

09:13:32 19 MR. DAVIES: No objection Your Honor.

09:13:33 20 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

09:13:34 21 (PTX Exhibit No. 20 was admitted into evidence.)

09:13:35 22 BY MS. KIM:

09:13:36 23 Q. Can you explain what this section of the NDA shows.

09:13:39 24 A. Yeah, this is, essentially, a product summary of the  
09:13:43 25 characteristics and features of the dry-powder or the

Waxman - Direct

09:13:46 1 inhalational powder of Treprostinil.

09:13:54 2 Q. And how does this relate to your opinions on  
09:13:59 3 infringement?

09:13:59 4 A. Well, this document, because it talks about the  
09:14:03 5 chemical properties the physical properties of the drug, it  
09:14:06 6 actually says a number of -- in a number of places in the  
09:14:09 7 document, like on Page 12 and Page 62 and 63, it describes  
09:14:15 8 the particle size of 1 to 5 microns and then specifically in  
09:14:19 9 the tables on 62 and Page 62 and Page 63, it describes  
09:14:24 10 particle size of being 3.5 microns.

09:14:28 11 Q. Thank you.

09:14:29 12 Let's move on to dependent Claim 8. Can you  
09:14:31 13 explain to the Court what the basis for your opinions are?

09:14:34 14 A. So, in Claim 8, it describes the formulation as  
09:14:39 15 containing no -- no metacresol which is a preservative that  
09:14:44 16 is sometimes added, and it is not part of the formulation of  
09:14:49 17 Treprostinil.

09:14:50 18 Q. What are the components that are identified in the  
09:14:54 19 documents that you reviewed?

09:14:54 20 A. You can see here that on the demonstrative, it  
09:15:00 21 describes the ingredients on top of Treprostinil as  
09:15:05 22 trehalose polysorbate 80, L-leucine sodium citrate, and  
09:15:09 23 sodium chloride.

09:15:12 24 Q. Thank you.

09:15:12 25 Dr. Waxman, do you have an opinion of whether

09:15:16 1 Liquidia induces infringement of the asserted claims?

09:15:17 2 A. I do yes.

09:15:19 3 Q. What are they?

09:15:20 4 A. I think it's pretty clear that they do induce  
09:15:23 5 infringement.

09:15:24 6 Q. And what's the basis for your opinion?

09:15:30 7 A. Well, I think this instructions for use that we went  
09:15:33 8 over earlier, the Liquidia 861 Treprostinil inhalational  
09:15:39 9 powder instructions explain very clearly to a physician and  
09:15:45 10 a clinician and, most importantly, the patients on how to  
09:15:47 11 use the product and, therefore, instruct them on  
09:15:51 12 infringement of the patent.

09:15:54 13 Q. Dr. Waxman, can you summarize your opinions for the  
09:15:56 14 Court.

09:15:56 15 A. I think it's pretty clear from everything we've gone  
09:16:00 16 over that the Liquidia 861 product infringes on all of the  
09:16:04 17 asserted claims of the patent.

09:16:09 18 MS. KIM: Thank you. I have no further  
09:16:09 19 questions.

09:16:12 20 THE COURT: Cross-examination.

09:16:14 21 MR. DAVIES: May I approach?

09:16:37 22 THE COURT: Yes.

09:16:49 23 MR. SUKDUANG: May I approach, Your Honor?

09:16:51 24 THE COURT: Sure.

09:16:51 25 CROSS-EXAMINATION

09:16:53 1 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:16:53 2 Q. Good morning, Dr. Waxman.

09:17:32 3 A. Good morning.

09:17:33 4 Q. It's good to see you again.

09:17:36 5 A. Just in real life.

09:17:37 6 Q. Pardon?

09:17:38 7 A. In real life.

09:17:39 8 Q. It does feel a little strange, doesn't it?

09:17:42 9 Dr. Waxman, I want to go back to your opinion  
09:17:47 10 regarding the scope of pulmonary hypertension in Claim 1 of  
09:17:51 11 the '793 patent. And this was the demonstrative that you  
09:17:57 12 used with your counsel. Is it your opinion -- well, it is  
09:18:04 13 your opinion now that pulmonary hypertension in Claim 1  
09:18:08 14 includes group one; correct?

09:18:10 15 A. Well, again, as I've said repeatedly, that pulmonary  
09:18:15 16 hypertension includes all formulations -- forms of pulmonary  
09:18:18 17 hypertension that involve the pulmonary arterial bed.

09:18:22 18 Q. So, those would be groups, in your opinion, one,  
09:18:24 19 three, four, and five?

09:18:26 20 A. As well as group two, but yes.

09:18:29 21 Q. Why didn't you list group two on here?

09:18:31 22 A. Well, because I was quoting what's in the -- the  
09:18:36 23 specific example of what's in the patent.

09:18:38 24 Q. So your opinion today is that pulmonary hypertension  
09:18:41 25 in the patent includes all of groups one, two, three, four

09:18:44 1 and five?

09:18:45 2 A. Well, I think as a POSA, I'm including group two. I  
09:18:49 3 don't think it says specifically anything about group two,  
09:18:53 4 but we -- like I said earlier, when we look at that table,  
09:18:57 5 it doesn't list wedge pressures or list the nature of the  
09:19:02 6 pressures, so we really don't know whether group two  
09:19:04 7 patients were included or not, but certainly I would  
09:19:06 8 consider treating them.

09:19:07 9 Q. And in the scope of pulmonary hypertension in the  
09:19:09 10 '793 patent, you were including both isolated and pre- and  
09:19:15 11 post-combined group two patients today?

09:19:16 12 A. Well, I'm not sure what you're asking. I'm not  
09:19:20 13 including isolated postcapillary patients as far as a  
09:19:24 14 subgroup that I would treat with a pulmonary vasodilator. I  
09:19:29 15 am including combined pre- and post-capillary disease as a  
09:19:32 16 group that I would consider treating.

09:19:35 17 Q. And you understand that Claim 1 of the '793 patent  
09:19:38 18 refers to a method of treating pulmonary hypertension?

09:19:41 19 A. Yes.

09:19:43 20 Q. And I'm just trying to be clear on the scope of  
09:19:46 21 patients that you're including in that. Are you including,  
09:19:49 22 with respect to group two, both isolated and pre- and  
09:19:53 23 post-combined?

09:19:54 24 A. Well, as I said consistently, I would treat and  
09:19:58 25 consider treating patients who have pulmonary arterial

09:20:02 1 involvement, which would include patients who have combined  
09:20:05 2 pre- and post-capillary disease.

09:20:07 3 Q. And, Doctor, maybe you're not quite understanding  
09:20:10 4 what I'm asking. In offering your opinions on written  
09:20:12 5 description and enablement, you need to understand what the  
09:20:15 6 full scope of the claim is; do you understand that?

09:20:17 7 A. Yes.

09:20:17 8 Q. Okay. So I'm going to ask you another time. For  
09:20:20 9 Claim 1, which is to a method of treating pulmonary  
09:20:23 10 hypertension, with respect to group two, did you include  
09:20:27 11 both isolated and pre- and post-combined patients?

09:20:30 12 A. I included patients who have pulmonary arterial  
09:20:35 13 involvement, so that would be the patients with combined  
09:20:37 14 pre- and post-capillary disease.

09:20:39 15 Q. So for your understanding of Claim 1, you have  
09:20:43 16 included all PH patients but have carved out the isolated  
09:20:48 17 group two patients; correct?

09:20:49 18 A. Well, as I said, we would not consider treating an  
09:20:53 19 isolated postcapillary patient with a pulmonary vasodilator  
09:20:57 20 of any kind.

09:20:58 21 Q. And in fact, you've carved them out of your  
09:21:00 22 definition of pulmonary hypertension that you applied to  
09:21:03 23 Claim 1; correct?

09:21:03 24 A. Well, I have not carved them out of the definition of  
09:21:06 25 pulmonary hypertension. I've simply carved them out of a



09:21:10 1 patient who has pulmonary arterial involvement and who you  
09:21:13 2 would consider treating with a pulmonary vasodilator.

09:21:16 3 Q. So then I'm still not clear. So, let's go to JTX 3,  
09:21:22 4 please. And please go to the claim which is on the last  
09:21:28 5 page.

09:21:36 6 And again, you see in Claim 1, it refers to a  
09:21:39 7 method of treating pulmonary hypertension; correct?

09:21:42 8 A. Yes.

09:21:43 9 Q. And I think we -- we understand that your opinion  
09:21:45 10 today is that WHO groups one, three, four, and five are  
09:21:51 11 included; correct?

09:21:52 12 A. Well, as I've said over and over again, the groupings  
09:21:57 13 really don't have a whole lot of bearing on who we decide to  
09:22:02 14 treat. They don't really speak to pathogenesis, pathology,  
09:22:05 15 or pathophysiology. It all comes down to, really, pre-  
09:22:09 16 versus postcapillary disease, and pulmonary hypertension  
09:22:12 17 simply defines an elevated pressure in the pulmonary  
09:22:15 18 arterial circuit.

09:22:16 19 Q. And I understand, Doctor, that today you referred to  
09:22:19 20 the grouping as arbitrary; correct?

09:22:21 21 A. I've always considered it somewhat arbitrary.

09:22:24 22 Q. But you then went on to identify percentages of your  
09:22:27 23 patient population that fell into each of those groups;  
09:22:29 24 correct?

09:22:29 25 A. Well, I was asked to break it down into how they

09:22:32 1 would fit into the WHO groups.

09:22:34 2 Q. And you're able to do that with respect to the WHO  
09:22:37 3 groups; correct?

09:22:37 4 A. I -- I am able to do that, yes.

09:22:39 5 Q. And the patent actually refers to the WHO groups in  
09:22:42 6 Column 1 of the patent; correct?

09:22:43 7 A. It does.

09:22:44 8 Q. Okay. So let's go back to the term "treating  
09:22:50 9 pulmonary hypertension." I'm going ask you one more time.  
09:22:53 10 For group two, did you include all of group two when you  
09:22:56 11 analyzed the full scope of the term "pulmonary hypertension"  
09:23:00 12 in Claim 1, or was there a particular subset that you carved  
09:23:04 13 out of your definition?

09:23:07 14 A. Well, as I've said, we would only be treating disease  
09:23:12 15 that affects the pulmonary arterial bed, and by that,  
09:23:15 16 really, we mean a patient who has an increased pulmonary  
09:23:18 17 vascular resistance. We wouldn't treat a patient whose  
09:23:21 18 pulmonary vascular resistance was normal, and in the  
09:23:24 19 isolated postcapillary disease state, the pulmonary vascular  
09:23:28 20 resistance is normal.

09:23:30 21 Q. So, I'm still not entirely clear.

09:23:33 22 THE COURT: Mr. Davies.

09:23:34 23 MR. DAVIES: Yes.

09:23:35 24 THE COURT: Why don't you move on. I understand  
09:23:36 25 what his medical opinion is. You can make legal arguments

09:23:40 1 later on.

09:23:40 2 MR. DAVIES: Understood, Your Honor.

09:23:42 3 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:23:42 4 Q. With respect to precapillary pulmonary hypertension,  
09:23:46 5 are all the groups that are included in Claim 1, in your  
09:23:49 6 opinion, precapillary?

09:23:50 7 A. Well, what's described in here as far as precapillary  
09:23:55 8 disease in the examples -- I'm sorry. Ask the question  
09:23:59 9 again.

09:24:00 10 Q. There's a reference of I couldn't -- I'm sorry. I  
09:24:03 11 apologize. I apologize.

09:24:08 12 If you look, there's a reference on your  
09:24:11 13 demonstrative to precapillary pulmonary hypertension.

09:24:14 14 A. Yes.

09:24:15 15 Q. And is it your opinion that only precapillary  
09:24:22 16 pulmonary hypertension patients are included within the  
09:24:24 17 definition of pulmonary hypertension for -- with respect to  
09:24:27 18 Claim 1?

09:24:27 19 A. Well, this gets to exactly what I've been saying over  
09:24:31 20 and over again, that "precapillary" implies disease in the  
09:24:36 21 pulmonary arterial bed. And patients with an increased  
09:24:40 22 pulmonary vascular resistance where there is disease,  
09:24:43 23 pathology, pathophysiology that reflects a change in blood  
09:24:48 24 flow through the pulmonary arterial circuit, would be  
09:24:51 25 candidates for treatment with pulmonary vasodilators.

09:25:16 1 Q. And Dr. Waxman, do you -- do you recall being deposed  
09:25:19 2 in this case.

09:25:19 3 A. I do, yes.

09:25:20 4 Q. And you were deposed. You were asked questions about  
09:25:22 5 the scope of pulmonary hypertension in Claim 1. Do you  
09:25:25 6 recall that?

09:25:25 7 A. I do, yes.

09:25:29 8 MS. KIM: Before you put that up, can you let me  
09:25:31 9 know what pages you're referring to so that I can see what  
09:25:33 10 it is?

09:25:34 11 MR. DAVIES: I'm sorry. I'm on Page 117 of  
09:25:36 12 Dr. Waxman's District Court deposition.

09:25:39 13 And, Dr. Waxman, there should be a copy in your  
09:25:42 14 binder there as well. Just let me know once you're there.

09:25:44 15 THE WITNESS: What tab is it?

09:25:47 16 MR. DAVIES: It should be labeled Depo  
09:25:48 17 Transcript District Court.

09:25:51 18 THE WITNESS: Okay.

09:25:53 19 MS. KIM: Your Honor, if I may, now that I know  
09:25:55 20 what page he's referring to, I think I know what Mr. Davies  
09:26:00 21 is going to use this for, and I would say it doesn't provide  
09:26:03 22 the full context of Dr. Waxman's testimony at his  
09:26:07 23 deposition. If Mr. Davies -- if we could hear some of the  
09:26:10 24 other questions that he's not pointing to because I see that  
09:26:13 25 he said Page 117.

Waxman - Cross

09:26:14 1 THE COURT: All right. Well, why don't we see  
09:26:17 2 what he does, and then you can make an objection in context.

09:26:23 3 MS. KIM: Thank you.

09:26:24 4 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:26:24 5 Q. And, Dr. Waxman, are you at Page 117?

09:26:26 6 A. Yes.

09:26:27 7 Q. And you can refer to Page 116 for some context, but  
09:26:30 8 you'll see I'm asking you about the plain and ordinary  
09:26:33 9 meaning that you applied to "pulmonary hypertension" of  
09:26:36 10 Claim 1; correct?

09:26:37 11 A. Yes.

09:26:40 12 Q. Okay. And if you go to Page 117, you were asked, "In  
09:26:47 13 your opinion, does it" -- talking about pulmonary  
09:26:51 14 hypertension here -- "describe the treatment of group three  
09:26:53 15 pulmonary hypertension?"

09:26:54 16 And your answer was "In this application, it  
09:26:56 17 does not."

09:26:57 18 Do you see that?

09:26:58 19 A. I see that. Yes.

09:26:59 20 Q. And that was your testimony?

09:27:00 21 A. That was my literal testimony, yes.

09:27:05 22 THE COURT: All right. So you say it's your  
09:27:08 23 literal testimony. What do you mean by that?

09:27:12 24 What's your explanation?

09:27:13 25 THE WITNESS: Sure. So, I think I was -- there

09:27:16 1 was a lot of questions about specific wording within the  
09:27:19 2 claims, and the claims themselves do not literally speak of  
09:27:24 3 group one, two, three, four or five. But when we look at  
09:27:27 4 the examples within the patent, it certainly describes a lot  
09:27:31 5 of examples of precapillary pulmonary hypertension, which  
09:27:35 6 I've kind of been focusing on quite a lot. And certainly,  
09:27:40 7 patients with pulmonary fibrosis, as are described in the  
09:27:45 8 patent, are a precapillary disease. Those would fit into a  
09:27:48 9 group three, it's just not literally spoken of in the  
09:27:52 10 claims.

09:27:53 11 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:27:53 12 Q. You were also asked "In your opinion, does Claim 1  
09:28:00 13 describe treatment of group four?"

09:28:03 14 And again, your answer was no; correct?

09:28:04 15 A. Again, literally, it did not speak of group four, but  
09:28:10 16 again, I have kind of been pretty consistent about my  
09:28:14 17 description of precapillary disease, pulmonary arterial  
09:28:17 18 disease, and the examples within the patent also.

09:28:21 19 Q. And then you were asked about group five and, again,  
09:28:23 20 you said no.

09:28:23 21 A. And again, same answer in that it is described in the  
09:28:28 22 examples but not specifically or literally described in the  
09:28:32 23 claims.

09:28:34 24 Q. And so then you were asked "In offering your opinions  
09:28:36 25 in your expert declarations offered in this case, the only

09:28:39 1 group that you included within Claim 1's reference to  
09:28:42 2 pulmonary hypertension is group one pulmonary arterial  
09:28:50 3 hypertension; correct?"

09:28:51 4 And for that you responded, "The only group that  
09:28:53 5 I included is pulmonary arterial hypertension."

09:28:56 6 And I asked "Understood. That's group one;  
09:29:00 7 correct?" And you said that includes group one.

09:29:02 8 And then I said, "As of May 2006, would that  
09:29:05 9 have included any other groups?"

09:29:06 10 And you said, "No."

09:29:07 11 Correct?

09:29:08 12 A. Well, I think there, I'm speaking as a clinician and  
09:29:12 13 kind of got wrapped up in the pulmonary arterial  
09:29:15 14 hypertension, but, again, my emphasis was on pulmonary  
09:29:18 15 arterial hypertension and pulmonary -- excuse me pulmonary  
09:29:21 16 arterial disease.

09:29:29 17 THE COURT: And, Doctor, do you do much  
09:29:32 18 testifying in patent cases?

09:29:33 19 THE WITNESS: No.

09:29:33 20 THE COURT: Is this your first time?

09:29:35 21 THE WITNESS: In court, yes.

09:29:37 22 THE COURT: Thank you.

09:29:40 23 MS. KIM: And Your Honor, I'd like to re-raise  
09:29:42 24 my request to just show up on the screen.

09:29:44 25 THE COURT: You can do that on redirect.

09:29:47 1 MS. KIM: Okay. Thank you.

09:29:49 2 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:29:49 3 Q. Can we go, please, to PTX 1213.

09:29:55 4 And Dr. Waxman, this was a publication that you  
09:30:15 5 talked about -- oh, I'm sorry. Just let me know once you're  
09:30:19 6 there.

09:30:19 7 A. PTX 1213?

09:30:21 8 Q. I believe it's 1213. Yes, 1213. It's the Roscigno,  
09:30:21 9 et al., paper?

09:30:32 10 A. That's in the other binder.

09:30:34 11 Q. This is in -- yes, I apologize. This is in counsel's  
09:30:38 12 direct binder. I apologize. The white binder.

09:30:41 13 A. Oh, sorry.

09:30:42 14 Q. No problem. That was my fault.

09:30:46 15 A. Okay.

09:30:50 16 Q. And you acknowledge that this paper is a measure of  
09:30:56 17 comparative bioavailability of both TYVASO and LIQ816;  
09:31:01 18 correct?

09:31:01 19 A. Correct.

09:31:01 20 Q. And a the bioavailability that's being looking at  
09:31:03 21 here is systemic bioavailability; correct?

09:31:06 22 A. Yes.

09:31:06 23 Q. And the blood levels that are being taken are being  
09:31:09 24 taken from a systemic vein, not in the lungs; correct?

09:31:14 25 A. Peripheral vein, yes.



09:31:15 1 Q. And the site of action for Treprostinil in treating  
09:31:19 2 PH is not in the systemic vasculature; correct?

09:31:22 3 A. Not in treating pulmonary hypertension pulmonary  
09:31:25 4 hypertension. It would be in the lung.

09:31:25 5 Q. So this paper does nothing to measure the level of  
09:31:29 6 either TYVASO or LIQ8619, the Treprostinil in those  
09:31:33 7 products, at the actual site of action in the lungs;  
09:31:37 8 correct.

09:31:37 9 A. Well, I wouldn't agree with that. I mean, if you  
09:31:40 10 have a systemic level circulating throughout the body, it's  
09:31:43 11 throughout the body. And it also has trans -- I would say  
09:31:48 12 transferred across multiple membranes to get into the  
09:31:52 13 systemic circulation. So it's certainly having an effect  
09:31:57 14 because of those levels in the pulmonary arterial system.

09:32:01 15 Q. Understand that an artery would have to pass through  
09:32:05 16 the pulmonary vasculature to get there, but this paper says  
09:32:08 17 nothing about the relative levels that Treprostinil achieved  
09:32:10 18 with these two products in the lungs; correct?

09:32:14 19 A. Well, again, blood is blood. It's throughout the  
09:32:16 20 entire body, so if you're measuring what's bioavailable in a  
09:32:24 21 peripheral stick or a peripheral blood sample, that is  
09:32:26 22 reflective of the whole system, the whole body.

09:32:29 23 Q. But it doesn't tell you how much passed through the  
09:32:32 24 lungs and the rate at which it passed through the lungs;  
09:32:34 25 correct?

09:32:35 1 A. I mean, specifically, you're just measuring blood  
09:32:38 2 levels, so that's what you're measuring.

09:32:43 3 Q. Bioavailability, I think you said, is not a measure  
09:32:45 4 of therapeutic effectiveness; correct?

09:32:48 5 A. It is simply a measure of the quantity that's in --  
09:32:52 6 available to the systems.

09:32:54 7 Q. And this study was done in healthy subjects not, PH  
09:32:58 8 patients; correct?

09:32:59 9 A. Correct.

09:33:00 10 Q. Is there remodeling that goes on -- I think that you  
09:33:03 11 discussed in PH patients -- that would not be addressed by  
09:33:06 12 this bioavailability study?

09:33:08 13 A. I'm not sure what you're asking. I mean, there's  
09:33:12 14 certainly remodeling that goes on in the pulmonary arterial  
09:33:14 15 system of patients with pulmonary arterial disease and not  
09:33:18 16 in normal, healthy controls. But bioavailability is  
09:33:23 17 measuring the serum quantity of the drug in the blood.

09:33:28 18 Q. And this is measuring the serum quantity of the drug  
09:33:31 19 of Treprostinil in healthy subjects and not PH patients;  
09:33:34 20 correct?

09:33:35 21 A. In this case, yes.

09:33:38 22 Q. Bioavailability is not a measure of hemodynamics, is  
09:34:13 23 it?

09:34:13 24 A. Not specifically, no.

09:34:23 25 Q. You said on direct that in your opinion, that

09:34:26 1 approximately two-thirds of the group two patients were pre-  
09:34:28 2 and post- combined group two patients; is that correct?

09:34:31 3 A. In my programs, population of the patients who have  
09:34:36 4 group two disease, about two-thirds of those had combined  
09:34:40 5 pre- and post-capillary disease.

09:34:43 6 Q. Do you know whether in 2006 -- strike that.

09:34:49 7 In 2006 -- in 2006, is it your opinion that  
09:35:01 8 isolated -- sorry, in 2006, would this two-thirds have also  
09:35:05 9 applied to the percent of pre- and post-combined patients in  
09:35:09 10 group two?

09:35:09 11 A. I would say that the breakdown of patients in our  
09:35:15 12 program -- and I would say in 2006, I was actually at the  
09:35:19 13 Mass General Hospital, not at the Brigham and Women's  
09:35:23 14 Hospital, but it was, essentially, the same program. It  
09:35:25 15 wasn't as big then, but it was certainly growing. But I  
09:35:29 16 would say it's pretty much the same breakdown as far as the  
09:35:34 17 percentages of patients who were in each subgroup.

09:35:38 18 Q. Can you go in the -- we're now in the black binder,  
09:35:43 19 the one that we passed up. And there should be a tab in  
09:35:46 20 there right before your depo transcript for an article  
09:35:51 21 that's Assad 2016. And just let me know once you're there.

09:36:05 22 A. Okay.

09:36:09 23 Q. And this is in the major journal of the American  
09:36:14 24 College of Cardiology --

09:36:14 25 A. Correct.

09:36:16 1 Q. -- correct, Doctor?

09:36:18 2 A. Yes.

09:36:18 3 Q. This article?

09:36:19 4 There's two authors that are listed. There's an  
09:36:22 5 Anna R. Hemnes and a John H. Newman. Do you see them as two  
09:36:27 6 authors of this article?

09:36:28 7 A. Hemnes and John Newman, yes.

09:36:33 8 Q. And you have eight published articles with both of  
09:36:35 9 them?

09:36:35 10 A. Yes.

09:36:36 11 Q. And they're from the Division of Allergy, Pulmonary,  
09:36:41 12 and Critical Care Medicine at Vanderbilt University School  
09:36:41 13 of Medicine?

09:36:45 14 A. Yes.

09:36:45 15 Q. And that's a well-respected group?

09:36:47 16 A. Yes.

09:36:48 17 Q. Are you -- have you seen this article before?

09:36:50 18 A. I can't recall.

09:36:55 19 Q. Can you turn to Page 2529.

09:37:08 20 A. Okay.

09:37:10 21 Q. Can you bring that up, Derrick? And go under  
09:37:13 22 results.

09:37:16 23 (Discussion held off the record.)

09:37:20 24 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:37:20 25 Q. 2529. The page number is in the corner. Go one

09:37:24 1 more.

09:37:25 2 Do you see, Dr. Waxman, the section on  
09:37:29 3 Demographic and Clinical Characteristics?

09:37:31 4 A. Yes.

09:37:31 5 Q. Do you see they looked at a 5,797 unique patients  
09:37:35 6 identified for right-heart cath?

09:37:38 7 A. Yes.

09:37:38 8 Q. And then do you see below that, they have a breakdown  
09:37:42 9 of the number that had pulmonary hypertension?

09:37:44 10 A. Yes.

09:37:46 11 Q. And that was 2,817?

09:37:49 12 A. Yes.

09:37:50 13 Q. Okay. And of those patients in this study, they  
09:37:55 14 classified 20 percent of them as having PAH?

09:37:58 15 A. Yes.

09:37:59 16 Q. And then they go on to say 13 percent had combined  
09:38:04 17 pre- and post-capillary pulmonary hypertension. Do you see  
09:38:10 18 that?

09:38:10 19 A. I do.

09:38:11 20 Q. And then they go onto say that 52 percent of the  
09:38:14 21 patients had isolated postcapillary pulmonary hypertension;  
09:38:19 22 correct?

09:38:19 23 A. Correct.

09:38:19 24 Q. Okay. And this was as of 2015?

09:38:22 25 A. Yes.

09:38:30 1 MR. DAVIES: Your Honor, I'd like to move this  
09:38:31 2 article into evidence.

09:38:35 3 MS. KIM: No objections, although, counsel, is  
09:38:37 4 this 2016 instead of 2015?

09:38:42 5 MR. DAVIES: Correct. It is 2016.

09:38:42 6 MS. KIM: Thank you.

09:38:43 7 THE COURT: Does it have an exhibit number?

09:38:45 8 MR. DAVIES: What is the next exhibit? PTX 2000  
09:38:52 9 -- DTX 2000.

09:38:55 10 THE COURT: All right. Well, it's admitted  
09:38:58 11 without objection.

09:38:58 12 (DTX Exhibit No. 2000 was admitted into  
09:38:59 13 evidence.)

09:38:59 14 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:39:50 15 Q. With respect to therapeutically effective, Doctor,  
09:39:53 16 it's your opinion that any improvement in the hemodynamic  
09:39:56 17 measures PAP or PVR would constitute therapeutic  
09:40:01 18 effectiveness in the '793 patent; correct?

09:40:04 19 A. Well, I think what I said earlier was that to be  
09:40:07 20 therapeutically effective, there needs to be an important or  
09:40:10 21 clinically important impact, and by that, I mean a reduction  
09:40:14 22 in pulmonary artery pressure and improvement or reduction in  
09:40:18 23 pulmonary vascular resistance.

09:40:21 24 Q. And what's your cutoff for what is clinically  
09:40:26 25 important improvement?

09:40:27 1 A. Well, I think as we talked about in my deposition, we  
09:40:32 2 had published previously that we had found that when you see  
09:40:36 3 at least a 12 percent reduction, that that often translated  
09:40:40 4 into a good response to therapy in the long term. And that  
09:40:45 5 would translate into patients feeling better, doing more and  
09:40:48 6 living longer.

09:40:51 7 Q. Can you turn to Page 200 of your district court  
09:40:59 8 deposition. And I'm back in the black binder.

09:41:02 9 A. 200.

09:41:15 10 Q. And, Doctor, I think the improvement that you just  
09:41:18 11 described is one that you apply in your clinical practice;  
09:41:21 12 correct?

09:41:21 13 A. It is, yes.

09:41:23 14 Q. Okay. So in your deposition, you were asked "So in  
09:41:25 15 your opinion, any improvement in PAP cardiac output and  
09:41:30 16 pulmonary vascular resistance would be sufficient to  
09:41:34 17 demonstrate therapeutically effective as that term is used  
09:41:37 18 in the '793 patent." And you answered yes.

09:41:40 19 Correct?

09:41:40 20 A. That's correct. Yes.

09:41:42 21 Q. So, when you did your analysis in the patent, the way  
09:41:46 22 you treated therapeutically effective was that any  
09:41:49 23 improvement in those three measures satisfied  
09:41:53 24 therapeutically effective; correct?

09:41:54 25 A. Well, I would say that in a disease that is dependent

09:41:58 1 on pressure being high to make the diagnosis, if you can  
09:42:02 2 bring that pressure down, that is therapeutically effective,  
09:42:05 3 yes.

09:42:10 4 Q. Dr. Waxman, you talked about single-event dose this  
09:42:15 5 morning. You would agree that a POSA would understand the  
09:42:17 6 term "single-event dose" to mean the amount of Treprostinil  
09:42:23 7 inhaled by a patient in a single treatment session?

09:42:24 8 A. I would -- well, I think we've left some stuff out  
09:42:28 9 there. A single-event dose is the -- the single event where  
09:42:34 10 you are delivering a therapeutically effective dose.

09:42:39 11 Q. So it's -- a single-event dose would mean the amount  
09:42:41 12 of Treprostinil inhaled by a patient in a single treatment  
09:42:45 13 session which also must be therapeutically effective?

09:42:47 14 A. Well, that would be a therapeutically effective  
09:42:52 15 single-event dose, yes.

09:42:56 16 Q. And you would agree that Claim 1 requires any  
09:42:59 17 single-event dose that's given to be therapeutically  
09:43:02 18 effective; correct?

09:43:03 19 A. I think Claim 1 states that there needs to be a  
09:43:07 20 single -- a therapeutically effective single-event dose  
09:43:12 21 delivered in one to three breaths.

09:43:13 22 Q. With respect to LIQ861, you recall looking at the  
09:43:19 23 approved prescribing information?

09:43:20 24 A. The approved prescribing information?

09:43:25 25 Q. Yes. You're aware that LIQ861 is tentatively



09:43:31 1 approved?

09:43:32 2 A. I -- when you talk about the prescribing  
09:43:35 3 information --

09:43:46 4 Q. And back in your binder now, and I'm at PTX 469.

09:44:05 5 A. So the package insert?

09:44:06 6 Q. Correct. The package insert.

09:44:14 7 And if you turn to -- you see there's some Bates  
09:44:16 8 numbers, Doctor, in the lower right-hand corner?

09:44:19 9 A. The lower right-hand where the -- you're talking  
09:44:23 10 Liquidia 008?

09:44:24 11 Q. Yes.

09:44:25 12 A. Yes.

09:44:26 13 Q. Can you go to the Bates number ending 8824?

09:44:29 14 A. Yes.

09:44:30 15 Q. And do you see under dosage administration it states  
09:44:35 16 Yutrepia should be administered three to five times per day?

09:44:38 17 A. Yes.

09:44:38 18 Q. So in your opinion, that would be three to five  
09:44:41 19 single-event doses?

09:44:43 20 A. That's correct.

09:44:44 21 Q. The label never instructs giving only a single dose  
09:44:47 22 of LIQ861 correct?

09:44:50 23 A. Well, the label says administer three to five times  
09:44:53 24 per day, contents of each capsule can be inhaled in two  
09:44:58 25 breaths.

## Waxman - Redirect

09:44:58 1 Q. So it does not instruct that it only be given once;  
09:45:01 2 correct?

09:45:01 3 A. It does not say once. It simply says three to five  
09:45:05 4 per day of single-event dosing.

09:45:10 5 MR. DAVIES: I have no further questions at this  
09:45:11 6 time, Your Honor.

09:45:12 7 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

09:45:14 8 MS. KIM: Just briefly, Your Honor.

09:45:20 9 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

09:45:21 10 BY MS. KIM:

09:45:25 11 Q. And, Dr. Waxman, it will be brief. Earlier, counsel  
09:45:29 12 asked you about what your understanding of PH and PAH was  
09:45:34 13 and brought up some of your deposition testimony. I just  
09:45:37 14 wanted to provide some context. I don't think that was -- I  
09:45:43 15 think you've clearly stated to the Court that your testimony  
09:45:46 16 has been consistent in this case. If you could turn to your  
09:45:50 17 deposition transcript to Page 92.

09:46:02 18 A. Oh, thanks.

09:46:12 19 Q. And do you see there on Page 92?

09:46:16 20 A. Yes.

09:46:17 21 Q. You were asked "QUESTION: What plain and ordinary  
09:46:21 22 meaning did you apply to the term pulmonary hypertension?"

09:46:23 23 And what was your answer?

09:46:24 24 A. I said pulmonary hypertension, as I've said over and  
09:46:29 25 over again, implies elevation of the pressure inside the

09:46:32 1 blood vessels of the lung.

09:46:34 2 Q. Okay. And then if you could turn to Page 95. You  
09:46:40 3 were asked: "Do all five categories of pulmonary  
09:46:44 4 hypertension exhibit elevated blood pressure in the lungs?"

09:46:47 5 And what was your answer?

09:46:47 6 A. That they are defined by an elevated blood pressure  
09:46:52 7 in the lungs.

09:46:52 8 Q. Thank you.

09:46:58 9 Just one -- a few more questions on  
09:47:00 10 therapeutically effective single-event dose. Counsel was  
09:47:03 11 asking you if there's anything in the Yutrepia label that  
09:47:08 12 says that you do it once a day. Do you recall that?

09:47:10 13 A. Yes.

09:47:11 14 Q. And he pointed you specifically to the language that  
09:47:13 15 said three to five times?

09:47:14 16 A. Yes.

09:47:16 17 Q. Is there anything in the patent that says such a dose  
09:47:19 18 has to be given only once per day?

09:47:21 19 A. No.

09:47:22 20 Q. If we could put up Claim 1 of the '793 patent. Is  
09:47:36 21 there anything in Claim 1 that requires that the  
09:47:38 22 single-event dose be given only once per day?

09:47:41 23 A. No, there's nothing there about frequency of dosing.

09:47:46 24 Q. And in fact, if you go to the '793 patent Column 8,  
09:47:53 25 lines 1, 2 what is the description there?

09:48:01 1 A. Column 8 lines 12. Treprostinil can be administered  
09:48:20 2 a single time per day or several times per day.

09:48:30 3 Q. What is the half-life of Treprostinil?

09:48:32 4 A. Terminal half-life is about just shy of four and a  
09:48:36 5 half hours.

09:48:36 6 Q. And is Treprostinil typically used for the long-term  
09:48:39 7 treatment of pulmonary hypertension patients?

09:48:41 8 A. It is, yes.

09:48:44 9 Q. So, you would understand that Treprostinil could be  
09:48:48 10 used multiple times a day for these patients; right?

09:48:51 11 A. Yes.

09:48:52 12 Q. All right. I have no further questions. Thank you.

09:48:54 13 THE COURT: All right. Doctor, did you and  
09:48:58 14 Dr. Hill, the defendant's expert, have a lot of professional  
09:49:03 15 interactions?

09:49:04 16 THE WITNESS: I guess it depends how you define  
09:49:08 17 a lot. We certainly interact professionally, yes.

09:49:12 18 THE COURT: And you weren't here yesterday;  
09:49:14 19 right?

09:49:14 20 THE WITNESS: I was in the cath lab yesterday.

09:49:18 21 THE COURT: Yeah, so, did you -- did your -- did  
09:49:20 22 you read the transcript of Dr. Hill's testimony yesterday?

09:49:23 23 THE WITNESS: I did, yes.

09:49:24 24 THE COURT: And in terms of his medical opinions  
09:49:27 25 that he gave during that, was there anything that you saw in

09:49:32 1 there that you disagreed with?

09:49:33 2 THE WITNESS: I -- I thought -- I think the --  
09:49:41 3 well, from a medical opinion, it seemed like most of the  
09:49:44 4 opinions were really related to what we're talking about  
09:49:46 5 here, not strictly applicable to clinical practice.

09:49:49 6 THE COURT: Well, and, really, that's it  
09:49:51 7 because, you know, doctors testifying about legal things is  
09:49:57 8 kind of outside your area of expertise. And the things that  
09:50:01 9 are in your area of expertise, did you see anything that he  
09:50:04 10 said that you disagreed with?

09:50:06 11 THE WITNESS: No. I -- I mean, we clearly  
09:50:07 12 agreed on postcapillary disease as something we wouldn't be  
09:50:10 13 treating with a pulmonary vasodilator. I think we agreed  
09:50:14 14 that there was room for treatment in patients with combined  
09:50:18 15 pre- and post-capillary disease. I think it's just a matter  
09:50:22 16 of the patient at the time. So, I would say we -- it looked  
09:50:28 17 to me like we agreed from the standpoint of medical opinion,  
09:50:32 18 yeah.

09:50:32 19 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

09:50:34 20 You're done. You can step down. Watch your  
09:50:36 21 step.

09:50:37 22 THE WITNESS: Thank you. Should I take these  
09:50:39 23 binders?

09:50:40 24 THE COURT: No, leave the binders. They'll take  
09:50:42 25 care of them.

09:50:43 1 THE WITNESS: Okay. Thank you.

09:51:14 2 MR. DAVIES: Your Honor, Defendants call  
09:51:18 3 Nicholas Hill.

09:51:18 4 THE COURT: All right. So, Dr. Hill, you're  
09:51:39 5 still sworn from yesterday, so you can just sit down. All  
09:51:41 6 right.

09:51:41 7 THE WITNESS: Oh. Thank you.

09:51:47 8 THE COURT: And before Mr. Davies begins,  
09:51:50 9 Dr. Hill, you heard the questions I just asked your opponent  
09:51:54 10 in this case; right?

09:51:55 11 THE WITNESS: Yes.

09:51:57 12 THE COURT: Did you hear him give any medical  
09:52:00 13 testimony that you disagree with?

09:52:03 14 THE WITNESS: Well, I think our view of  
09:52:05 15 treatment of pre- and post-capillary pulmonary hypertension  
09:52:09 16 is a little bit different. I did say that there's a  
09:52:12 17 rationale for doing -- for treating that group, but I -- I'm  
09:52:18 18 a little more concerned about the safety concerns that I  
09:52:22 19 raised yesterday, particularly the danger of inducing  
09:52:27 20 pulmonary hypertension. And so, I think we don't have  
09:52:33 21 enough evidence in that group to justify saying, well, we  
09:52:38 22 should just go ahead and treat with these pulmonary  
09:52:43 23 hypertension-specific drugs that are available. And in  
09:52:45 24 fact, none have been approved to date to treat the -- that  
09:52:52 25 entity. So they don't seem yet to be as responsive to these

## Hill - Redirect

09:52:56 1 drugs as, say, group one pulmonary hypertension.

09:53:01 2 THE COURT: All right. Go ahead, Mr. Davies.

09:53:02 3 MR. DAVIES: Thank you, Your Honor.

09:53:02 4 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

09:53:02 5 BY MR. DAVIES:

09:53:04 6 Q. Welcome back, Dr. Hill. Today, I'd like to turn to  
09:53:07 7 your opinions on non-infringement.

09:53:08 8 Do you remember yesterday that we spoke about  
09:53:11 9 your definition of a POSA?

09:53:13 10 A. Yes, we did.

09:53:14 11 Q. And with respect to your opinions on  
09:53:16 12 non-infringement, did you apply the same POSA that you  
09:53:18 13 discussed yesterday?

09:53:18 14 A. Yes, I did.

09:53:20 15 Q. Can you please turn to JTX 3 in the binder in front  
09:53:24 16 of you.

09:53:25 17 A. Yes, I'm there.

09:53:28 18 Q. This is a copy of the '793 patent?

09:53:30 19 A. Yes, it is.

09:53:31 20 Q. Can you turn to Claim 1 at the back of the patent,  
09:53:36 21 please.

09:53:38 22 A. I see it.

09:53:39 23 Q. And do you see that refers to a single-event dose?

09:53:42 24 A. Yes, it does.

09:53:44 25 Q. And do you have an understanding as to what the

09:53:47 1 meaning of single-event dose is in Claim 1?

09:53:49 2 A. I think it is a dose that achieves what would be a  
09:54:01 3 therapeutically effective treatment of -- either by applying  
09:54:08 4 multiple breaths or multiple pills at the same event.

09:54:11 5 Q. When you say it's in the same event, would it be the  
09:54:16 6 single-dose event?

09:54:17 7 A. Yes.

09:54:18 8 Q. But it can be delivered over multiple breaths?

09:54:20 9 A. Yes.

09:54:22 10 Q. There's no definition provided in the '793 patent of  
09:54:25 11 a single-event dose; correct?

09:54:27 12 A. There is not.

09:54:30 13 Q. Can a single-event dose include chronic dosing?

09:54:33 14 A. I don't think so.

09:54:35 15 Q. Why not?

09:54:36 16 A. In order to achieve chronic dosing, you would have to  
09:54:41 17 give multiple doses over a sustained period of time.

09:54:45 18 Q. So then can a single event include any kind of  
09:54:48 19 multiple dosing?

09:54:48 20 A. I don't think so.

09:54:52 21 Q. Does the '793 patent discuss frequency of dosing?

09:54:55 22 A. It does.

09:54:56 23 Q. Can you turn to Column 8 at line 1. Yeah, right at  
09:55:10 24 the top there.

09:55:11 25 And is this the discussion you were referring



## Hill - Redirect

09:55:16 1 to?

09:55:16 2 A. Yes.

09:55:17 3 Q. And what does this passage describe?

09:55:19 4 A. It says that Treprostinil can be administered in a  
09:55:23 5 single time per day or several times per day.

09:55:25 6 Q. And of those two descriptions, which one applies to  
09:55:29 7 the claim?

09:55:29 8 A. The single time per day.

09:55:37 9 Q. You mentioned chronic dosing. What is chronic  
09:55:40 10 dosing?

09:55:40 11 A. Chronic dosing is multiple -- or sustained treatment  
09:55:48 12 over an extended period of time.

09:55:51 13 Q. Can you turn to Example 1 of the patent. It should  
09:55:55 14 begin at Column 8, line 59.

09:56:02 15 And does Example 1 describe acute or chronic  
09:56:05 16 dosing?

09:56:06 17 A. Clearly, it states specifically acute dosing.

09:56:11 18 Q. It -- and what is acute dosing?

09:56:13 19 A. Acute dosing, it would be a -- an administration of  
09:56:19 20 doses over a brief interval.

09:56:22 21 Q. Can you turn to Example 2.

09:56:28 22 A. That would be page or column?

09:56:30 23 Q. Column 16, line 56, I apologize.

09:56:33 24 A. Yes, I see it.

09:56:39 25 Q. And does this describe acute or chronic dosing?

## Hill - Redirect

09:56:42 1 A. Specifically acute effect.

09:56:46 2 Q. Do either of these examples describe the  
09:56:49 3 administration of more than one dose?

09:56:51 4 A. No, they don't.

09:56:57 5 Q. Can we go back to Claim 1 of the patent. And blow it  
09:57:07 6 up there.

09:57:08 7 Do you see the reference to therapeutically  
09:57:12 8 effective single-event dose in Claim 1?

09:57:13 9 A. Yes, I do.

09:57:15 10 Q. And is the term "therapeutically effective" defined  
09:57:18 11 anywhere in the '793 patent?

09:57:20 12 A. No, it's not.

09:57:21 13 Q. Do have you an opinion of how a POSA would view  
09:57:23 14 "therapeutically effective" in the '793 patent?

09:57:25 15 A. My view is that "therapeutically effective" to a  
09:57:33 16 POSA, either looking at this patent or in general use, is  
09:57:37 17 that it is a treatment that achieves improvement in  
09:57:46 18 symptoms, in function, and/or in survival.

09:57:50 19 Q. And in your opinion, is that the plain and ordinary  
09:57:53 20 meaning of the term?

09:57:53 21 A. Yes.

09:57:55 22 Q. How did your clinical practice inform your  
09:57:58 23 understanding of the term "therapeutically effective" in the  
09:58:01 24 '793 patent?

09:58:02 25 A. Well, I think as a POSA, when I see a patient who

09:58:12 1 comes to me with pulmonary hypertension, they are  
09:58:14 2 complaining of symptoms, most prominently shortness of  
09:58:18 3 breath with exertion. They are complaining of limitation in  
09:58:24 4 function. They may be having trouble climbing a flight of  
09:58:29 5 stairs. And if I am successful in treating these patients,  
09:58:37 6 I alleviate those problems. I have them feeling better. I  
09:58:41 7 have them functioning better and -- and if I don't achieve  
09:58:46 8 ends like that, regardless of what I do to the hemodynamics,  
09:58:48 9 they are not happy.

09:58:50 10 Q. You just mentioned the word "hemodynamics," Doctor.  
09:58:53 11 What are hemodynamics?

09:58:54 12 A. Well, the "hemo" part refers to blood. The  
09:58:58 13 "dynamics" part refers to pressures and flow. So literally,  
09:59:03 14 it literally means blood pressures and flows. And here  
09:59:08 15 we're talking, of course, about pulmonary circulation.

09:59:12 16 Q. How are hemodynamics relevant to pulmonary  
09:59:16 17 hypertension?

09:59:16 18 A. They're very relevant. You know, I do not discount  
09:59:20 19 the value of assessing hemodynamics. In fact, we need to  
09:59:26 20 check hemodynamics in order to make a diagnosis of pulmonary  
09:59:30 21 hypertension. It is defined hemodynamically. It's  
09:59:35 22 extremely important to do hemodynamics to differentiate  
09:59:38 23 between the different groups because most of the groups  
09:59:44 24 require the filling pressure of the left ventricle to be  
09:59:48 25 normal whereas in group two, the filling pressures are

## Hill - Redirect

09:59:52 1 elevated. And to make that distinction accurately, you have  
09:59:55 2 to do hemodynamics. They also can be in helpful in  
10:00:00 3 monitoring patients. If a patient is deteriorating, they  
10:00:03 4 could be very helpful in deciding specifically what kinds of  
10:00:06 5 treatments you might want to select.

10:00:08 6 Q. Are hemodynamic measures themselves sufficient to  
10:00:12 7 demonstrate therapeutic effectiveness?

10:00:15 8 A. I don't believe they are.

10:00:16 9 Q. Why not?

10:00:17 10 A. Because they don't necessarily reflect what is  
10:00:23 11 happening systemically or with patient function or survival.

10:00:29 12 Q. You're aware that Dr. Waxman has taken the position  
10:00:32 13 that "therapeutically effective" means any improvement in  
10:00:36 14 certain hemodynamic measures; correct?

10:00:38 15 A. Yes.

10:00:39 16 Q. Do you agree with Dr. Waxman's definition?

10:00:41 17 A. I respectfully disagree.

10:00:43 18 Q. And why?

10:00:44 19 A. Well, as I was saying, I don't think there's a direct  
10:00:49 20 relationship between what happens with -- with the  
10:00:52 21 hemodynamics, especially acutely, and what happens  
10:00:56 22 subsequently to therapeutic response. A fair number of  
10:01:01 23 patients don't respond at all acutely and yet may have quite  
10:01:04 24 robust responses later on. And we don't do -- we do acute  
10:01:12 25 vasodilator testing commonly, but that would not prevent us

## Hill - Redirect

10:01:16 1 from using a treatment chronically, and often we will see a  
10:01:22 2 therapeutic response under those circumstances.

10:01:24 3 Also, even if you do see an acute vasodilator  
10:01:29 4 response that doesn't always translate into improved  
10:01:35 5 symptoms, function, and survival. And one example would be  
10:01:39 6 the study on the IV epoprostenol that we talked about  
10:01:45 7 yesterday, where there was an acute benefit in hemodynamics  
10:01:50 8 and yet, these patients had increased mortality and no  
10:01:53 9 improvement in quality of life after months period of time.

10:02:00 10 Q. Dr. Hill, have you formed an opinion whether the use  
10:02:02 11 of Liquidia's 861 product will infringe Claim 1 of the '793  
10:02:07 12 patent?

10:02:08 13 A. Yes, I have that opinion.

10:02:09 14 Q. And what is your opinion?

10:02:12 15 A. I don't believe it will infringe on the patent.

10:02:13 16 Q. And why not?

10:02:14 17 A. Well, first of all, it doesn't call for a  
10:02:19 18 single-event dose. And secondly, I -- it doesn't impinge on  
10:02:30 19 the therapeutic effectiveness part because I don't believe a  
10:02:34 20 single-event dose is therapeutically effective.

10:02:41 21 Q. Have you reviewed the approved labeling for  
10:02:44 22 Liquidia's 861 product?

10:02:45 23 A. Yes, I have.

10:02:49 24 Q. In your opinion, does the approved labeling instruct  
10:02:52 25 or encourage a patient or physician to administer just a

## Hill - Redirect

10:02:55 1 single-event dose of Liquidia's 861 product?

10:02:58 2 A. It does not.

10:02:59 3 Q. Can you please turn to DTX 408 in your binder. And  
10:03:05 4 let's go to Page 4, the letter on the front.

10:03:07 5 Dr. Hill, what's described at Page 4?

10:03:12 6 A. Page 4, we have highlights of the prescribing  
10:03:18 7 information for Yutrepia, which is, of course, the brand  
10:03:22 8 name for the Liquidia 861 product.

10:03:24 9 Q. And if you flip through the rest of the pages, do you  
10:03:27 10 understand this to be the approved -- currently approved  
10:03:30 11 labeling for Liquidia's 861 product?

10:03:34 12 A. That's my understanding, yes.

10:03:36 13 MR. DAVIES: Your Honor, I'd like to enter DTX  
10:03:39 14 408 into evidence.

10:03:40 15 MR. JACKSON: No objection.

10:03:41 16 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

10:03:42 17 (DTX Exhibit No. 408 was admitted into  
10:03:43 18 evidence.)

10:03:43 19 BY MR. DAVIES:

10:03:44 20 Q. Dr. Hill, on Page 4, do you see the section under  
10:03:48 21 dosage and administration?

10:03:50 22 A. I do.

10:03:50 23 Q. How many times does it instruct administration of  
10:03:53 24 Yutrepia?

10:03:54 25 A. Three to five times a day.

## Hill - Redirect

10:03:57 1 Q. And if you turn to the next page at Section 2.1, it  
10:04:03 2 should be usual dosage in adults.

10:04:07 3 Derrick on the next page, I think.

10:04:10 4 A. Yeah.

10:04:15 5 Q. Okay. Do you see that, Dr. Hill?

10:04:20 6 A. I do.

10:04:21 7 Q. And what does this section on dosage and  
10:04:24 8 administration instruct with respect to the frequency of  
10:04:27 9 dosing?

10:04:28 10 A. It states three to five times per day.

10:04:31 11 Q. Can we turn to Page 17 of the label.

10:04:41 12 A. I'm there.

10:04:42 13 Q. And what is at Page 17?

10:04:45 14 A. These are instructions for use of Yutrepia.

10:04:50 15 Q. And beginning on Page 16, are these the same  
10:04:53 16 instructions for use that Dr. Waxman opined on during his  
10:04:57 17 testimony?

10:04:57 18 A. They are.

10:04:59 19 Q. How many blister cards of capsules are included in  
10:05:02 20 the Yutrepia carton?

10:05:04 21 A. In each carton, there are seven blister cards.

10:05:08 22 Q. And how many capsule in each blister card?

10:05:11 23 A. Four.

10:05:12 24 Q. And so how many total capsules are supplied in a  
10:05:15 25 carton of -- will be supplied in a carton of LIQ861?

## Hill - Redirect

10:05:19 1 A. 28.

10:05:22 2 Q. Given these instructions in the description here,  
10:05:24 3 would a patient administer only a single-event dose of  
10:05:26 4 Liquidia's 861 patent?

10:05:27 5 A. I would think not.

10:05:30 6 Q. Why not?

10:05:30 7 A. It's pretty clear that the manufacturers have in mind  
10:05:34 8 multiple doses over a period of time.

10:05:43 9 Q. Does this labeling for Liquidia's '861 product  
10:05:50 10 provide any evidence that the product is therapeutically  
10:05:53 11 effective after a single-event dose?

10:05:54 12 A. No, it doesn't.

10:05:57 13 Q. Let's look at Page 6 of 35 at the bottom, Derrick.  
10:06:02 14 And let's look at Section 6.1 titled Clinical Trials  
10:06:07 15 Experience.

10:06:09 16 A. Yes.

10:06:10 17 Q. Does this section of the label provide any evidence  
10:06:13 18 that Liquidia's 861 product is therapeutically effective  
10:06:16 19 after a single-event dose?

10:06:17 20 A. No, it doesn't.

10:06:19 21 Q. Do you see the INSPIRE trial?

10:06:21 22 A. Yes, I do.

10:06:22 23 Q. What is INSPIRE?

10:06:24 24 A. The INSPIRE trial was a safety and tolerability trial  
10:06:31 25 that enrolled patients either who had been transitioned from



## Hill - Redirect

10:06:38 1 TYVASO, the United Therapeutics inhaled product, to Liquidia  
10:06:45 2 861 and also patients who were on background pulmonary  
10:06:52 3 hypertension therapies, and the Yutrepia was added to their  
10:06:55 4 therapy.

10:06:57 5 Q. Does this section of the label say anything about the  
10:07:00 6 therapeutic effectiveness from the INSPIRE trial?

10:07:04 7 A. No, it doesn't.

10:07:04 8 Q. Were you involved in the INSPIRE trial?

10:07:06 9 A. Yes, I was.

10:07:08 10 Q. Did the INSPIRE trial measure efficacy or therapeutic  
10:07:13 11 effectiveness of Liquidia's 861 product?

10:07:15 12 A. The main reason for doing the study was to look at  
10:07:20 13 safety and tolerability, but they did have some exploratory  
10:07:23 14 endpoints looking at efficacy.

10:07:25 15 Q. Was efficacy ever assessed after a single-event dose  
10:07:31 16 of Liquidia's 861 product?

10:07:32 17 A. No, it wasn't.

10:07:33 18 Q. Can you take again -- let's go back to the label and  
10:07:36 19 go to Page 12. And I'd like to look at Section 14, titled  
10:07:41 20 clinical studies.

10:07:42 21 Just let me know once you're there, Doctor.

10:07:46 22 A. I'm there.

10:07:46 23 Q. Okay. And there's a study here that's referred to as  
10:07:50 24 the TRIUMPH 1 study. Do you see that?

10:07:52 25 A. Yes.

## Hill - Redirect

10:07:53 1 Q. And what is the TRIUMPH study?

10:07:54 2 A. The TRIUMPH trial was a trial undertaken by United  
10:08:01 3 Therapeutics to do a formal large study on safety and  
10:08:08 4 efficacy. It was a 12-week trial, and it randomized 235  
10:08:13 5 patients between inhaled TYVASO and -- or an inhaled  
10:08:21 6 placebo. And it established the efficacy of TYVASO, in  
10:08:27 7 terms of improving six-minute walk distance.

10:08:30 8 Q. Was Liquidia's 861 product administered in the  
10:08:33 9 Triumph trial?

10:08:34 10 A. No.

10:08:35 11 Q. Does the Triumph trial data in the label provide any  
10:08:38 12 information as to whether Liquidia's 861 product is  
10:08:41 13 therapeutically effective after a single-event dose?

10:08:44 14 A. No.

10:08:45 15 Q. And in the Triumph trial, how often was TYVASO  
10:08:48 16 administered?

10:08:49 17 A. Four times a day.

10:08:51 18 Q. What was the number of breaths that was the target?

10:08:55 19 A. Well, the patients were titrated up to nine breaths a  
10:09:00 20 day at the maximum dose as tolerated.

10:09:03 21 Q. Is that a single-event dose of TYVASO when it's given  
10:09:06 22 four times per day?

10:09:07 23 A. No.

10:09:14 24 Q. When was therapeutic effectiveness measured in the  
10:09:18 25 Triumph study?

10:09:20 1 A. Therapeutic effectiveness was measured with a  
10:09:26 2 six-minute walk distance. It was measured after one day,  
10:09:30 3 after six weeks, and after 12 weeks. And for the quality of  
10:09:35 4 life score, it was after 12 weeks.

10:09:37 5 Q. After one day of administration of TYVASO, was TYVASO  
10:09:41 6 therapeutically effective?

10:09:42 7 A. There was no change in the six-minute walk distance  
10:09:47 8 after one day.

10:09:48 9 Q. So no evidence of therapeutic effectiveness after a  
10:09:51 10 full day of dosing of TYVASO?

10:09:53 11 A. In terms of the six-minute walk distance, that's  
10:09:56 12 correct.

10:09:56 13 Q. Does the label refer to any testing of therapeutic  
10:09:59 14 effectiveness after a single-event dose of Liquidia's 861  
10:10:02 15 product?

10:10:03 16 A. No, it doesn't.

10:10:04 17 Q. Does the label ever instruct dosing of a single-event  
10:10:08 18 dose of Liquidia's 861 product?

10:10:10 19 A. No it doesn't.

10:10:13 20 Q. What would happen if a patient took only a  
10:10:16 21 single-event dose of Liquidia's 861 product and then stopped  
10:10:19 22 taking it?

10:10:20 23 A. There might be a transient improvement in  
10:10:25 24 hemodynamics. There might be no effect on the hemodynamics,  
10:10:28 25 but in the longer term, the effect would dissipate within

## Hill - Redirect

10:10:31 1 hours, and you would expect no therapeutic effect beyond  
10:10:38 2 those first few hours.

10:10:40 3 Q. Have you seen any evidence, even outside the label,  
10:10:44 4 that Liquidia's 861 product is therapeutically effective  
10:10:48 5 after a single-event dose?

10:10:50 6 A. No.

10:10:52 7 Q. To your knowledge, has Liquidia ever determined  
10:10:55 8 therapeutic effectiveness after a single-event dose of  
10:10:57 9 Liquidia's 861 product?

10:11:02 10 A. Not aware of that.

10:11:04 11 Q. To your knowledge, has Liquidia ever examined the  
10:11:06 12 results of hemodynamic responses after a single-event dose  
10:11:10 13 of Liquidia's 861 product?

10:11:12 14 A. There was a study referred to as the 201 study that  
10:11:19 15 was designed to look at the hemodynamic responses after an  
10:11:24 16 initial acute dose and then after 16 weeks of chronic  
10:11:29 17 dosing.

10:11:30 18 Q. And what's the status of that study, to your  
10:11:32 19 knowledge?

10:11:32 20 A. It was stopped as a consequence of the pandemic and  
10:11:39 21 it enrolled very few patients. I have seen no -- nothing of  
10:11:47 22 the results from that trial.

10:11:51 23 Q. Does the approved label for Liquidia's 861 product  
10:11:54 24 include any report of any hemodynamics obtained after  
10:11:58 25 administration of Liquidia's 861 product?

## Hill - Redirect

10:12:00 1 A. No.

10:12:12 2 Q. In Dr. Waxman's testimony, do you recall that he  
10:12:15 3 compared TYVASO to 861 in offering his opinions on  
10:12:20 4 infringement?

10:12:22 5 A. I do.

10:12:23 6 Q. Is Liquidia's 861 product a generic of TYVASO?

10:12:26 7 A. No, it is not.

10:12:27 8 Q. How are the products different?

10:12:29 9 A. Well, one is delivered in a liquid form via a  
10:12:36 10 nebulizer, and it creates a mist that the patient then  
10:12:41 11 inhales. And the LIQ -- the Liquidia 861 is a dry-powder  
10:12:52 12 for inhalation.

10:12:54 13 Q. Can you turn to DTX 576 in your binder.

10:13:06 14 A. I'm there.

10:13:09 15 Q. And what is DTX 576?

10:13:12 16 A. Well, this is the bioavailability study that  
10:13:17 17 Dr. Waxman commented on in his direct testimony.

10:13:21 18 MR. DAVIES: Your Honor, I'd like to enter DTX  
10:13:24 19 576 into the record.

10:13:26 20 MR. JACKSON: No objection, Your Honor.

10:13:26 21 THE COURT: All right it's admitted without  
10:13:29 22 objection.

10:13:29 23 (DTX Exhibit No. 576 was admitted into  
10:13:29 24 evidence.)

10:13:29 25 BY MR. DAVIES:

10:13:30 1 Q. What is bioavailability?

10:13:32 2 A. It refers to the absorption of a pharmacological  
10:13:39 3 agent into the bloodstream. And as Dr. Waxman said, it's  
10:13:44 4 measured in peripheral veins periodically after the dosing.  
10:13:52 5 So they look at samples every number of minutes to get a  
10:13:58 6 curve of the level of drug that is in the blood.

10:14:02 7 Q. Is bioavailability a measure of therapeutic  
10:14:06 8 effectiveness for TYVASO?

10:14:06 9 A. It's not in this study.

10:14:08 10 Q. Is bioavailability in this publication a measure of  
10:14:11 11 therapeutic effectiveness for Liquidia's 861 product?

10:14:14 12 A. No, it's not.

10:14:15 13 Q. Do the systemic blood levels that are seen in this  
10:14:19 14 paper reflect the levels of drug that are seen in the lung  
10:14:23 15 for inhaled TYVASO or Liquidia's 861 product?

10:14:26 16 A. Well, in order to get into the bloodstream with an  
10:14:32 17 inhalation agent, it has to go into the airways. It has to  
10:14:36 18 cross the walls of the airways and then into the substance  
10:14:41 19 of the lung. The idea with both of these agents is to relax  
10:14:49 20 the smooth muscles in the walls of the vessels and open them  
10:14:53 21 up. But exactly what the concentration is at the target,  
10:14:58 22 which is those small arteries, there's no way of directly  
10:15:03 23 measuring that, and we don't know for sure.

10:15:08 24 Q. Can measurements of bioavailability -- oh, these  
10:15:12 25 subjects in the study, were they healthy subjects or PH

10:15:16 1 patients?

10:15:16 2 A. They were healthy subjects.

10:15:20 3 Q. In your opinion, what would a clinician conclude  
10:15:23 4 about therapeutically effective -- let me try that again.  
10:15:26 5 Strike that.

10:15:27 6 In your opinion, what would a clinician conclude  
10:15:30 7 about therapeutic effectiveness of Liquidia's 861 product  
10:15:34 8 from this study?

10:15:37 9 A. I don't think you can conclude anything about the  
10:15:41 10 therapeutic effectiveness from the study.

10:15:45 11 MR. DAVIES: Your Honor, I have no further  
10:15:46 12 questions at this time.

10:15:47 13 THE COURT: All right. Well, let's take the  
10:15:49 14 morning break of ten minutes. So, we'll be back shortly.

10:15:57 15 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

10:16:07 16 (Recess was taken.)

10:28:52 17 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

10:28:58 18 THE COURT: All right. Let's resume here.

10:29:01 19 Cross-examination.

10:29:01 20 CROSS-EXAMINATION

10:29:04 21 MR. JACKSON: Good morning, Your Honor.

10:29:05 22 THE COURT: Good morning.

10:29:06 23 BY MR. JACKSON:

10:29:07 24 Q. Good morning, Dr. Hill.

10:29:08 25 A. Good morning, Mr. Jackson.

10:29:10 1 Q. So, you offered the opinion -- two opinions today.  
10:29:16 2 One is on single-event dose and one was on therapeutic  
10:29:20 3 effectiveness correct?

10:29:20 4 A. That's correct.

10:29:21 5 Q. And all of the other opinions offered about the label  
10:29:24 6 and about Liquidia's -- whether or not Liquidia infringes  
10:29:28 7 the patent is based on those two definitions, just  
10:29:33 8 therapeutically effective and single-event dose; correct?

10:29:34 9 A. Yes.

10:29:35 10 Q. Everything else flows from those two; right?

10:29:37 11 A. That's right.

10:29:38 12 Q. Okay. Now, your definition of therapeutically  
10:29:41 13 effective, the counsel didn't show you any documents  
10:29:44 14 supporting it, did they?

10:29:45 15 A. No.

10:29:47 16 Q. Okay. And counsel didn't -- strike that.

10:29:55 17 Let's talk for a second about the disease and  
10:29:57 18 the drug that we're -- that's at issue here.

10:30:00 19 You agree that hemodynamics is the blood  
10:30:05 20 pressure flows in the pulmonary circulation; correct?

10:30:08 21 A. Yes.

10:30:09 22 Q. In fact, that's the testimony I elicited out of you  
10:30:12 23 yesterday; correct?

10:30:13 24 A. Yes.

10:30:14 25 Q. And so you agree that pulmonary hypertension is the



10:30:18 1 constriction and thickening of the vessels that narrows the  
10:30:21 2 channels of the heart and lungs; right?

10:30:23 3 A. That's one of the causes of it. Literally pulmonary  
10:30:29 4 hypertension is elevation of pulmonary artery pressure.

10:30:33 5 Q. And you agree that pulmonary hypertension is based on  
10:30:37 6 the measurements of the hemodynamics of the patient and, in  
10:30:41 7 particular, an elevation of pulmonary arterial pressure over  
10:30:45 8 normal levels; right?

10:30:47 9 A. That's correct.

10:30:48 10 Q. And in fact, that's in the patent; right?

10:30:50 11 That language is in the patent; right?

10:30:52 12 A. Yes.

10:30:54 13 Q. And you agree that using a -- the goal of using a  
10:30:58 14 vasodilator such as Treprostinil is to reduce the pulmonary  
10:31:02 15 arterial pressure and/or pulmonary vascular resistance;  
10:31:06 16 correct?

10:31:06 17 A. Yes.

10:31:08 18 Q. And you also agree that the '793 patent contains  
10:31:13 19 details of hemodynamic and gas exchange experiments;  
10:31:16 20 correct?

10:31:17 21 A. Say that again, please.

10:31:18 22 Q. You agree that the '793 patent contains details of  
10:31:23 23 hemodynamic and gas exchange experiments; correct?

10:31:27 24 A. Yes, I think so.

10:31:33 25 Q. And looking at Example 1, on Column 8 through 11, the

10:31:37 1 patent itself talks about the relative changes of  
10:31:40 2 hemodynamic and gas exchange parameters compared to  
10:31:44 3 baseline; correct?

10:31:44 4 A. Correct.

10:31:47 5 Q. And those calculations are the hemodynamics  
10:31:51 6 parameters, such as a pulmonary arterial pressure and  
10:31:54 7 pulmonary vascular resistance, among other things; right?

10:31:57 8 A. Right.

10:31:59 9 Q. And at the bottom of column 11 starting at line 62,  
10:32:05 10 let's pull that, up please.

10:32:07 11 Do you agree that it says the application of an  
10:32:09 12 effective amount of Treprostinil in only a few or even one  
10:32:14 13 single breath was achieved with a highly concentrated  
10:32:17 14 Treprostinil sodium solution; right?

10:32:20 15 A. I see that, and I agree. Yes.

10:32:23 16 Q. And so that -- that's the patent itself uses the word  
10:32:27 17 that administration was effective; right?

10:32:29 18 A. It did say that, yes.

10:32:31 19 Q. Okay. And so, the patent is teaching based on the  
10:32:37 20 results that are described in Example 1, which measures  
10:32:41 21 pulmonary arterial pressure and pulmonary vascular  
10:32:43 22 resistance, among other hemodynamic parameters, that an  
10:32:48 23 effective amount of Treprostinil was achieved in a few or  
10:32:52 24 even one single breath; correct?

10:32:55 25 A. That's what it says, yes.

10:32:56 1 Q. Okay. And so, you will agree with me that the '793  
10:33:01 2 patent shows that there's hemodynamic effectiveness from  
10:33:03 3 Treprostinil; correct?

10:33:04 4 A. I agree with that, yes.

10:33:07 5 Q. And on -- the average patient, a single  
10:33:11 6 administration of Treprostinil to someone suffering from  
10:33:13 7 pulmonary hypertension results in a beneficial reduction of  
10:33:18 8 pulmonary arterial pressure and/or vascular resistance;  
10:33:22 9 correct?

10:33:23 10 A. On average, yes. These are all populations, and not  
10:33:26 11 every patient is going to have that kind of response.

10:33:30 12 Q. Now, you would agree with me that the examples in the  
10:33:32 13 patent don't purport to measure long-term things like change  
10:33:37 14 in walk distance over time or the survival rates over a  
10:33:41 15 longer period of time; correct?

10:33:42 16 A. That's true.

10:33:44 17 Q. Instead, the patent we just looked at measures --  
10:33:46 18 talked about an effectiveness -- an effective dose from --  
10:33:50 19 an effective amount of a single-event dose; right?

10:33:53 20 A. Effective in improving hemodynamics, yes.

10:34:00 21 Q. And you would agree that a person of ordinary skill  
10:34:04 22 in the art -- you would agree that a person of ordinary  
10:34:06 23 skill in the art would have understood that for patients  
10:34:08 24 with pulmonary hypertension, changes in hemodynamic  
10:34:14 25 properties or parameters would have an association with

10:34:17 1 survival; correct?

10:34:18 2 A. Not necessarily.

10:34:22 3 Q. Okay. Let's pull up your deposition on January 4th,  
10:34:26 4 and let's look at Page 114, lines 1 through 6.

10:34:30 5 Right. Where you were asked this exact same  
10:34:33 6 question. "So people of ordinary skill in the art  
10:34:36 7 understood that changes in hemodynamic properties or  
10:34:39 8 parameters have an association with survival in connection  
10:34:43 9 with pulmonary hypertension patients; correct?"

10:34:45 10 And your answer there was yes; correct?

10:34:48 11 A. That is correct.

10:34:49 12 Q. And that was truthful testimony; right?

10:34:51 13 A. Yes.

10:34:52 14 Q. And in fact, Liquidia has begun an acute and/or --  
10:34:58 15 strike that.

10:34:59 16 Liquidia began an acute and chronic hemodynamic  
10:35:04 17 study on LIQ 861 which is called LI -- LTI 201; right?

10:35:11 18 A. That's correct.

10:35:14 19 Q. And so, let's pull up PTX 59, please.

10:35:17 20 And this is that study; right?

10:35:25 21 It's in your binder, but it also might be easier  
10:35:28 22 on the screen as well.

10:35:29 23 A. Yes. This is -- this is a description of the study.

10:35:33 24 Q. Okay.

10:35:34 25 MR. JACKSON: Move to admit PTX 59.

Hill - Cross

10:35:36 1 MR. DAVIES: No objection, Your Honor.

10:35:37 2 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

10:35:39 3 (PTX Exhibit No. 59 was admitted into evidence.)

10:35:39 4 BY MR. JACKSON:

10:35:40 5 Q. And you agree that the primary efficacy purpose of  
10:35:42 6 this study was -- for LIQ861 -- was to assess the  
10:35:50 7 hemodynamic parameters; correct?

10:35:51 8 A. That's correct.

10:35:55 9 Q. Now, you agree with me that as of 2006, a person of  
10:36:01 10 ordinary skill would have known that the half-life of  
10:36:02 11 Treprostinil in the body was roughly three to four hours;  
10:36:06 12 correct?

10:36:06 13 A. That's correct.

10:36:08 14 Q. And you agree with me that you would not be able to  
10:36:11 15 dose somebody once a day with Treprostinil as a result;  
10:36:15 16 correct?

10:36:15 17 A. To apply a therapy over time, yes.

10:36:22 18 Q. Okay. So, all things being equal, would you expect  
10:36:26 19 that you'd be able to dose somebody once a day with an  
10:36:29 20 active ingredient that has a three- to four-hour half-life?

10:36:33 21 A. It would not be a once-a-day therapeutic agent.

10:36:38 22 Q. So you have to dose probably somewhere between three  
10:36:40 23 and four times a day; right?

10:36:42 24 A. That's about right.

10:36:44 25 Q. Now, let's turn for a minute to the single-event

10:36:50 1 dose. Your definition of a single-event dose is the dose  
10:36:57 2 that is delivered in a single session; right?

10:37:00 3 A. That is correct.

10:37:01 4 Q. So for example, the Yutrepia tells you to take  
10:37:05 5 multiple breaths right?

10:37:06 6 A. It does.

10:37:06 7 Q. And so it's that multiple breaths that would be a  
10:37:09 8 single-event dose; correct?

10:37:10 9 A. Yes, it would.

10:37:11 10 Q. Okay. Now, were you here when Dr. Rubin's deposition  
10:37:16 11 was played yesterday?

10:37:17 12 A. Yes, I was.

10:37:18 13 Q. And so during that deposition, Dr. Rubin commented  
10:37:21 14 that if you need to take two blood pressure pills four times  
10:37:26 15 a day, each of those administration of the two pills would  
10:37:28 16 be a single-event dose; right?

10:37:31 17 That's what he testified?

10:37:33 18 A. I recall that, yes.

10:37:33 19 Q. And you agree with that definition, right?

10:37:35 20 A. I do.

10:37:35 21 Q. And so that's true even though you're taking two  
10:37:38 22 pills four times a day; right?

10:37:41 23 A. Yes.

10:37:42 24 Q. Okay. So each of those separate four-times-a-day  
10:37:44 25 sessions is a single-event dose; right?

10:37:46 1 A. I don't see it that way, no.

10:37:50 2 Q. Okay. So --

10:37:51 3 A. I think each administration of the two pills is a  
10:37:54 4 single-event. And then have you to do that four times a  
10:37:58 5 day.

10:37:58 6 Q. Yes, I think we're on the same page. Thank you.  
10:38:01 7 That was helpful.

10:38:02 8 And so, let's look at PTX 134, which I believe  
10:38:08 9 your -- counsel for Liquidia showed to you. This is the  
10:38:14 10 April 2021 label; right?

10:38:16 11 A. Yes.

10:38:17 12 Q. And you agree with me that -- let's turn to -- you  
10:38:28 13 agree -- you agree with me that it -- the label provides  
10:38:31 14 that the dosing is -- is 15 point -- 26.5, 53 milligrams,  
10:38:42 15 79 milligrams, 106 milligrams, et cetera. There are sort of  
10:38:47 16 dosings in there; right?

10:38:48 17 A. Those are the -- that's the amount of drug in -- in  
10:38:51 18 the different capsule size.

10:38:53 19 Q. And that's the amount of drug that's going to be  
10:38:55 20 administered in that dosing session; right?

10:38:58 21 A. Right. And you can combine these capsules to get  
10:39:01 22 higher levels. But that -- that would be the single event,  
10:39:05 23 yes.

10:39:05 24 Q. And you would agree that a number of those -- a  
10:39:08 25 number of those calculations fall within 15 to

10:39:11 1 90 micrograms; correct?

10:39:12 2 A. They do.

10:39:13 3 Q. Okay. And again, each of the -- and again,

10:39:24 4 Yutrepia's label -- strike that.

10:39:26 5 Liquidia's label states that each capsule should  
10:39:29 6 be taken in one to two breaths; right?

10:39:31 7 A. That's correct.

10:39:32 8 Q. And each of those one to two breaths would be a  
10:39:35 9 single-event dose; right?

10:39:36 10 A. Well, again, if you have multiple capsule, you might  
10:39:39 11 end up taking one or two breaths for each capsule, but that  
10:39:43 12 would be a single-event dose. It might be more -- more  
10:39:48 13 breaths.

10:39:48 14 Q. In fact, the label specifically says always inhale  
10:39:52 15 each capsule two times to make sure you get your full dose;  
10:39:55 16 right?

10:39:56 17 A. I don't know if that's what is said literally, but  
10:40:01 18 they do say two breaths encouraged.

10:40:07 19 Q. Let's pull up PTX 61, please.

10:40:10 20 A. Actually, if I read it, it says the contents of each  
10:40:14 21 capsule can be inhaled in one to two breaths. That's what  
10:40:18 22 it says right there.

10:40:19 23 Q. Okay. But it's not just can be. The instructions  
10:40:22 24 for use actually is instructing always inhale at least two  
10:40:26 25 breaths or always inhale two breaths; right?



10:40:28 1 A. I just read that right out of the highlight.

10:40:31 2 Q. Okay. So let's take a look at PTX 61. You've seen  
10:40:35 3 this document before; right?

10:40:36 4 A. Yes.

10:40:37 5 Q. Okay. And it is the instructions for use; right?

10:40:41 6 It's a letter to the FDA, and it includes the  
10:40:43 7 label; correct?

10:40:44 8 A. Right. That's the letter, and then the instructions  
10:40:47 9 are starting on Page 4.

10:40:48 10 Q. Okay. So, let's go to Bates Number 836, please.  
10:40:53 11 You've seen this before; right?

10:40:54 12 A. Yes.

10:40:56 13 Q. Okay. And so these are the instructions for use for  
10:40:58 14 Liquidia's product; right?

10:40:59 15 A. That is correct.

10:41:00 16 Q. Now, about three -- about four or five bullets up  
10:41:04 17 to -- up from the bottom, do you see where it says "always  
10:41:07 18 inhale"?

10:41:07 19 A. Right.

10:41:09 20 Q. So it says, "Always inhale each capsule two times to  
10:41:11 21 make sure you get your full dose of Yutrepia; right?

10:41:15 22 A. That's what it says there, yes.

10:41:18 23 Q. Now, let's go back to a second to the '793 patent.

10:41:24 24 Counsel for Liquidia focused on language on top of Column 8,  
10:41:29 25 lines 1 to 2. Do you recall that?

10:41:30 1 A. I'm not up with you yet.

10:41:34 2 Q. Fair enough. It's Treprostinil can be administered a

10:41:36 3 single time per day or several times per day.

10:41:38 4 A. Yes. Okay.

10:41:39 5 Q. And counsel pointed this language to you; right?

10:41:41 6 A. Yes. And we have -- we've looked at it twice today

10:41:43 7 already, yes.

10:41:48 8 Q. Nothing in the '793 patent provides that it addresses

10:41:52 9 only acute treatment; correct?

10:41:54 10 A. Well, the examples are looking at acute treatment.

10:42:03 11 Q. But -- agreed. But that's because they're looking at

10:42:06 12 the various examples of what the effect on the given patient

10:42:11 13 was after taking this dose; right?

10:42:13 14 A. Right.

10:42:14 15 Q. Okay.

10:42:14 16 A. So maybe I'm not understanding your question. I'm

10:42:16 17 sorry.

10:42:16 18 Q. Yeah, so let me help if I can clarify. The patent

10:42:21 19 doesn't specifically say it's -- this is only about acute

10:42:25 20 treatment; correct?

10:42:26 21 A. Well, what it says is a single-event dose. That's

10:42:33 22 what it says.

10:42:34 23 Q. Okay. I understand it says single-event dose. I

10:42:37 24 understand it says therapeutically effective; right?

10:42:40 25 A. Yes.

10:42:40 1 Q. But we've already agreed that you can have  
10:42:43 2 multiple -- like with the blood pressure example we went  
10:42:47 3 through a couple minutes ago, you can have multiple  
10:42:50 4 single-event doses per day; right?

10:42:51 5 A. Yes, you can.

10:42:54 6 Q. Okay. And each single-event -- if the drug has a  
10:43:01 7 effect on hemodynamics in the patient, that is a therapeutic  
10:43:07 8 effect on the patient; right?

10:43:08 9 A. Say that again, please.

10:43:10 10 Q. I'll come back to it in a second.

10:43:12 11 Would you agree with me that nothing in the  
10:43:16 12 patent precludes more than one single-event dose per day?

10:43:22 13 A. Right. Yeah, and I -- let me just say that it is  
10:43:27 14 true that these are multiple single events, but I think the  
10:43:31 15 term "single event" refers to a single event. I would just  
10:43:34 16 call that multiple events in a day. I think, you know, what  
10:43:40 17 this says is it's -- it can be a single time or several  
10:43:43 18 time.

10:43:43 19 Q. Right. So multiple single-event doses per day. Is  
10:43:47 20 that what you're talking about?

10:43:48 21 A. Well, I don't know -- it seems to me to be calling  
10:43:52 22 those single events is a little redundant. They're multiple  
10:43:56 23 events.

10:43:56 24 Q. Okay. You'll agree with me that Liquidia is relying  
10:44:00 25 on TYVASO, the United Therapeutics TYVASO, safety and

10:44:05 1 efficacy data to support the approval of Liquidia's product;  
10:44:08 2 right?

10:44:09 3 A. Yes.

10:44:10 4 Q. And you agree that TYVASO and Liquidia and LIQ861  
10:44:15 5 involve the same molecule; right?

10:44:17 6 A. They do.

10:44:18 7 Q. And you would agree with me that you would be  
10:44:19 8 surprised if LIQ 861 was significantly different than TYVASO  
10:44:24 9 for the reduction of pulmonary arterial pressure and  
10:44:27 10 pulmonary vascular resistance; correct?

10:44:30 11 A. I would expect them to be quite similar, yeah.

10:44:32 12 Q. And you would agree -- and you would agree that you  
10:44:36 13 would be surprised by any differences because the molecules  
10:44:39 14 are the same; right?

10:44:40 15 A. Well, the formulation is quite different. And TYVASO  
10:44:48 16 was liquid. The LIQ861 is a dry-powder, and exactly how  
10:44:55 17 they behave might be different. This is why this INSPIRE  
10:45:00 18 study was done, to establish, especially for the FDA, that  
10:45:06 19 there was safety and tolerability of this different  
10:45:08 20 formulation.

10:45:09 21 Q. Would you agree with me that you would be surprised  
10:45:11 22 -- strike that.

10:45:12 23 You agree with me that you would be surprised by  
10:45:15 24 any differences because the molecules of TYVASO and LIQ are  
10:45:20 25 the same; right?

## Hill - Cross

10:45:22 1 A. Yes.

10:45:24 2 MR. JACKSON: No further questions.

10:45:26 3 Thank you, Your Honor.

10:45:27 4 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

10:45:28 5 MR. DAVIES: Nothing, Your Honor.

10:45:29 6 THE COURT: All right. Dr. Hill, you can step  
10:45:31 7 down. Watch your step.

10:45:32 8 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

10:46:26 9 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, at this time -- I'm  
10:46:27 10 sorry to interrupt.

10:46:28 11 THE COURT: No, I'm listening.

10:46:29 12 MR. SUKDUANG: At this time, Defendants call  
10:46:33 13 Dr. Igor Gonda, who will be discussing the issues of the  
10:46:37 14 invalidity of the '793 patent.

10:46:39 15 THE COURT: All right.

10:46:40 16 DEPUTY CLERK: Please state and spell your full  
10:46:42 17 name for the record.

10:46:42 18 THE WITNESS: Igor, I-G-O-R, Gonda, G-O-N-D-A.

10:46:48 19 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
10:46:49 20 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
10:46:51 21 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
10:46:53 22 truth, you do so affirm?

10:46:55 23 THE WITNESS: Yes, I do.

10:46:56 24 DEPUTY CLERK: Thank you, Doctor. Here's the  
10:46:58 25 microphone on top of the computer. Just make sure you speak

Gonda - Direct

10:47:01 1 up.

10:47:01 2 IGOR GONDA, the witness herein, after having  
10:47:01 3 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
10:47:02 4 follows:

10:47:02 5 THE WITNESS: Yes.

10:47:03 6 DIRECT EXAMINATION

10:47:03 7 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

10:47:03 8 Q. Hello, Dr. Gonda.

10:47:04 9 A. Hello.

10:47:05 10 Q. Can you please state your full name for the record?

10:47:07 11 A. Igor Gonda.

10:47:11 12 Q. And where are you currently employed?

10:47:12 13 A. I'm employed in Respidex, LLC.

10:47:17 14 Q. And what is your title at Respidex?

10:47:19 15 A. I'm the founder and CEO.

10:47:21 16 Q. What types of services does Respidex provide?

10:47:25 17 A. We provide a variety of services for multiple  
10:47:30 18 organizations that develop, obviously, the products as well  
10:47:33 19 as the pharmaceutical industry, particularly in the field of  
10:47:39 20 inhalation products and products for nasal delivery.

10:47:42 21 Q. Do you have a CV, Dr. Gonda?

10:47:44 22 A. Yes, I do.

10:47:45 23 Q. Could you can we please turn to DTX 722.

10:47:50 24 Is this a copy of your CV?

10:47:53 25 A. Yes, it is.

Gonda - Direct

10:47:53 1 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to offer DTX  
10:47:58 2 722 into evidence.

10:47:59 3 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

10:48:00 4 (DTX Exhibit No. 722 was admitted into  
10:48:01 5 evidence.)

10:48:01 6 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

10:48:02 7 Q. Dr. Gonda, where do you go to graduate school?

10:48:04 8 A. I went to graduate school at University of Leeds in  
10:48:07 9 England.

10:48:08 10 Q. And what degree did you get?

10:48:10 11 A. I received a Ph.D. degree in physical chemistry, and  
10:48:15 12 prior to that, a bachelor of science in chemistry.

10:48:17 13 Q. And what year did you receive your Ph.D.?

10:48:20 14 A. In 1974.

10:48:24 15 Q. Over the course of your career, what's been the focus  
10:48:26 16 of your scientific work?

10:48:28 17 A. The focus of my scientific work has been therapeutic  
10:48:33 18 inhalation and diagnosing inhalations. That's been the  
10:48:38 19 focus.

10:48:38 20 Q. And how long have you been working on inhalations and  
10:48:42 21 therapeutic inhalations?

10:48:44 22 A. It's about 46 years.

10:48:47 23 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, we'd like to offer  
10:48:48 24 Dr. Gonda as an expert in the field of inhaled drugs,  
10:48:52 25 inhaled drug formulations, and inhalation devices as well as

Gonda - Direct

10:48:56 1 their development.

10:48:59 2 MR. CARSTEN: No objection, Your Honor.

10:48:59 3 THE COURT: You may proceed.

10:49:00 4 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

10:49:02 5 Q. Dr. Gonda, I'd like to just discuss at a very high  
10:49:05 6 level what your opinions in this case are. Can you provide  
10:49:08 7 the Court what are your opinions regarding the invalidity of  
10:49:12 8 '793 patent?

10:49:13 9 A. I think it is invalid.

10:49:16 10 Q. And for what reasons?

10:49:17 11 A. I think that it lacks enablement, and it lacks  
10:49:21 12 possession of the invention.

10:49:23 13 Q. And with respect to the '793 patent claim, what  
10:49:26 14 aspect of those claims are your opinions based on?

10:49:30 15 A. Can you please repeat the question.

10:49:34 16 Q. Sure. Are your opinions focused on the formulations  
10:49:38 17 disclosed in Claim 1?

10:49:39 18 A. Yes, they are.

10:49:47 19 Q. And do are they focused on a particular type of  
10:49:50 20 formulation within the scope of Claim 1?

10:49:52 21 A. Yes, they are particularly focused on the powder  
10:49:56 22 formulations.

10:49:57 23 Q. Now, I'd like to talk about the different types of  
10:50:01 24 inhalations devices. Have you prepared a demonstrative?

10:50:03 25 A. Yes, I have.



Gonda - Direct

10:50:05 1 Q. Can we bring up DDX 5.1, please. Is this a  
10:50:08 2 demonstrative you prepared?

10:50:09 3 A. Yes, it is.

10:50:10 4 Q. So can you just describe what, generally, this  
10:50:13 5 demonstrative shows?

10:50:14 6 A. So, this demonstrative shows the four fundamental  
10:50:20 7 types of inhaled devices and formulations. So the first one  
10:50:27 8 is a nebulizer, which is a device that they take  
10:50:33 9 formulations of the typically water which are placed in the  
10:50:37 10 nebulizer, and the power to form the aerosol comes from  
10:50:40 11 compressed air from a compressed air cylinder composition  
10:50:46 12 similar to the one on the top. And that energy is used to  
10:50:50 13 disperse the liquid into fine droplets and push the aerosol  
10:50:55 14 out of the device into the mouthpiece from which the patient  
10:50:58 15 is inhaling.

10:51:01 16 Q. And with respect to the nebulizer and the liquid  
10:51:05 17 formulation on the top left, does TYVASO use a nebulizer?

10:51:09 18 A. Yes, TYVASO uses a nebulizer.

10:51:13 19 Q. On the top right, you have pressurized metered dose  
10:51:17 20 inhaler. What kind of -- can you describe how a pressurized  
10:51:20 21 metered dose inhaler works?

10:51:22 22 A. Sure. So the energy to get the aerosol out of the  
10:51:28 23 device and disperse it into small particles comes from the  
10:51:32 24 compressed air which comes liquified inside the cartridge  
10:51:36 25 that goes into the device and then the patient actuates this

Gonda - Direct

10:51:41 1 device. The compressed air will push the dose out of the  
10:51:45 2 device, and it will also disperse the energy, disperse it  
10:51:50 3 into small droplets that will be inhaled by the patient.

10:51:53 4 Q. What type of formulation is used within a pressurized  
10:51:57 5 metered-dose inhaler.

10:51:58 6 A. It's a liquid.

10:51:59 7 Q. Okay. And is the, like, a typical asthma inhaler an  
10:52:03 8 example of when a pressurized metered-dose inhaler would be?

10:52:07 9 A. Yes, a typical asthma inhaler would be a typical  
10:52:11 10 device.

10:52:11 11 Q. On the bottom left side, have you a soft mist  
10:52:14 12 inhaler. Could you describe how that soft mist inhaler  
10:52:16 13 works.

10:52:17 14 A. Yes, I can. So the energy for that device comes  
10:52:22 15 typically from a compressed spring, and when the patient  
10:52:27 16 actuates the device, the spring will expand to push a liquid  
10:52:31 17 typically against a water solution of the drug. So through  
10:52:35 18 some form orifice which will form the fine droplets, and the  
10:52:39 19 energy of that will also push the aerosol out of the device  
10:52:42 20 and then the patient will inhale the aerosol.

10:52:45 21 Q. And what type of formulation is used within a soft  
10:52:49 22 mist inhaler?

10:52:50 23 A. It is typically an aqueous solution. It's a liquid  
10:52:54 24 of the drug in water.

10:52:57 25 Q. And then the last device on the right-hand side, I

Gonda - Direct

10:53:00 1 know we've talked about that earlier, but in the case, what  
10:53:03 2 is a dry-powder inhaler and how does that work?

10:53:06 3 A. So, a dry-powder inhaler is quite different in at  
10:53:11 4 least two respects from the other inhalers. It uses a  
10:53:16 5 dry-powder formulation. It doesn't use the liquids. And  
10:53:19 6 also the energy to get the dose out of the inhaler and  
10:53:24 7 disperse it into small particles that would be suitable for  
10:53:28 8 inhalation comes from the patient's ability to -- from the  
10:53:30 9 energy of the patients, the muscles in the lungs to create  
10:53:35 10 the air flow that will then get the dose out of the device  
10:53:39 11 and disperse into particles of small size.

10:53:42 12 Q. And again, what type of formulation was used in the  
10:53:45 13 dry-powder inhaler?

10:53:46 14 A. It's a dry-powder formulation.

10:53:49 15 Q. Could you use a liquid in a dry-powder formulation?

10:53:52 16 Excuse me. Can you use a liquid formulation in  
10:53:54 17 a dry-powder inhaler?

10:53:55 18 A. No, you could not.

10:53:57 19 Q. Could you use a powder formulation in a nebulizer?

10:54:00 20 A. No, you could not.

10:54:03 21 Q. Would it be fair to say that the dry-powder inhaler  
10:54:06 22 is the only inhalation device that uses a patient's own  
10:54:11 23 power to bring the drug into the body?

10:54:14 24 A. As far as I know, it's the only device of that  
10:54:20 25 nature, yes.

Gonda - Direct

10:54:20 1 Q. Are you aware of any papers that discuss the energy  
10:54:26 2 needed by a patient in order to use a dry-powder inhaler?

10:54:30 3 A. Yes, I am.

10:54:32 4 Q. Could we turn to DTX 268, please. And is this one of  
10:54:39 5 the publications you considered?

10:54:40 6 A. Yes, it is.

10:54:42 7 Q. And what's the title of the publication?

10:54:43 8 A. It's called Medical Aerosol Inhalers: Past, present  
10:54:47 9 and future.

10:54:48 10 Q. Okay. And who is the author?

10:54:50 11 A. It's A. R. Clark.

10:54:52 12 Q. And is he is one of UT's expert in his this case?

10:54:55 13 A. Yes, I believe he is.

10:54:57 14 Q. And when was this paper published?

10:54:59 15 A. It was published in 1995.

10:55:02 16 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor I'd like to enter DTX  
10:55:04 17 268 into evidence.

10:55:05 18 MR. CARSTEN: No objection, Your Honor.

10:55:06 19 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

10:55:07 20 (DTX Exhibit No. 268 was admitted into  
10:55:08 21 evidence.)

10:55:08 22 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

10:55:08 23 Q. Could we -- could you turn to Page 12 of 19 for me.  
10:55:11 24 And there's a paragraph that begins paradoxically.

10:55:15 25 Did you consider this paragraph?

10:55:17 1 A. Yes.

10:55:17 2 Q. And what does this passage state?

10:55:20 3 A. This was a very profound statement that the world  
10:55:24 4 follows. And it says in 1995, all currently available DPIs  
10:55:29 5 utilize the energy in the patient's inspiration as the power  
10:55:32 6 source for aerosol generation. Therefore, their delivery  
10:55:36 7 and dispersion performance and, hence, the dose which they  
10:55:40 8 deliver to the lung is affected by a patient's ability to  
10:55:43 9 inhale at a suitably high flow rate.

10:55:46 10 Q. What does "inspiration" mean in the context of  
10:55:50 11 dry-powder inhalers?

10:55:51 12 A. Well, as I mentioned, in dry-powder inhalers, it's  
10:55:55 13 the patient's inspiration is the inhalation through the  
10:56:00 14 dry-powder inhaler. It's the ability to have adequate  
10:56:03 15 inspiration for it at any specific volume that is required  
10:56:07 16 for dry-powder inhalers.

10:56:09 17 Q. So, in laymen's terms what is this -- what is the  
10:56:12 18 Clark paper telling persons of ordinary skill in the art to  
10:56:16 19 do with respect to dry-powder inhalers?

10:56:19 20 A. Well, it says that you have to pick the device that  
10:56:23 21 your target population of patients, in this case, pulmonary  
10:56:27 22 arterial hypertension patients, a device and test it whether  
10:56:30 23 the patients can use it, how can they use it, and whether  
10:56:33 24 it's going to be the right combination of the patient's  
10:56:36 25 disease with the device and the formulation to get the

Gonda - Direct

10:56:40 1 adequate dose and the adequate particle size distribution.

10:56:45 2 Sorry. If you can't follow me. Just --

10:56:48 3 Q. She'll let you know. She's fantastic. If she can't  
10:56:50 4 get you, she'll -- she'll tell you, Dr. Gonda.

10:56:54 5 So let's turn to the drugs -- the drug that's  
10:56:57 6 involved in this case, Treprostinil. Are you aware that  
10:56:59 7 Treprostinil is used in Liquidia's LIQ861 product?

10:57:03 8 A. Yes, I am.

10:57:05 9 Q. Are there any inhaled Treprostinil products in the  
10:57:08 10 market? Inhaled Treprostinil products --

10:57:11 11 A. Yes.

10:57:11 12 Q. -- in the market?

10:57:12 13 And what is that?

10:57:12 14 A. It's TYVASO.

10:57:14 15 Q. And who markets TYVASO?

10:57:16 16 A. United Therapeutics.

10:57:20 17 Q. Today, are there any dry-powder formulations of  
10:57:23 18 Treprostinil on the market?

10:57:25 19 A. No.

10:57:27 20 Q. Are you are you aware of any companies that are  
10:57:29 21 develop developing dry-powder inhalers?

10:57:31 22 A. Yes, I am.

10:57:34 23 Q. And what are those companies?

10:57:35 24 A. They are Mannkind and Liquidia, Mannkind and  
10:57:39 25 Liquidia.

Gonda - Direct

10:57:39 1 Q. With respect to Mannkind, how do they make their  
10:57:43 2 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil?

10:57:45 3 A. So, MannKind takes Treprostinil and they use the  
10:57:51 4 proprietary technology -- in fact, two proprietary  
10:57:54 5 technologies. They use the Technosphere, which a propriety  
10:57:59 6 technology, to make particles suitable for inhalation. And  
10:58:04 7 then they use the proprietary inhaler called Dreamboat which  
10:58:08 8 they combine together to form the product of Treprostinil  
10:58:13 9 dry-powder inhaler.

10:58:15 10 Q. Does Liquidia use a proprietary process to make their  
10:58:19 11 dry-powder formulation?

10:58:20 12 A. Yes. Liquidia uses a proprietary process which is  
10:58:25 13 called PRINT, and in the process, they take Treprostinil.  
10:58:29 14 They take a particular type of salt, Treprostinil salt.  
10:58:33 15 They dissolve the salt. They form the solution of that salt  
10:58:38 16 with other materials. Then they power that solution into  
10:58:43 17 the PRINT technology equipment. They evaporate the solution  
10:58:46 18 to form the small particles, and then they dry the particles  
10:58:50 19 and store them in appropriate conditions.

10:58:54 20 Q. Do you understand that Liquidia filed a new drug  
10:58:56 21 application for their Liquidia LIQ861 product?

10:59:00 22 A. Yes, I do.

10:59:01 23 Q. Have you seen a press release relating to that?

10:59:04 24 A. Yes, I have.

10:59:05 25 Q. Can we bring up DTX 369, please.

Gonda - Direct

10:59:07 1 And on the top right corner what is this,  
10:59:13 2 Dr. Gonda?

10:59:14 3 A. It is the announcement that Liquidia submits the new  
10:59:19 4 drug applications for the product Treprostinil inhalation  
10:59:24 5 powder to the U.S. FDA for the treatment of pulmonary  
10:59:28 6 arterial hypertension.

10:59:28 7 Q. And when did Liquidia publicly announce that they  
10:59:31 8 filed their new drug application for LIQ861?

10:59:34 9 A. They published it on January 27th, 2020.

10:59:38 10 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to enter DTX  
10:59:41 11 369 into evidence.

10:59:41 12 MR. CARSTEN: No objection, Your Honor.

10:59:42 13 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
10:59:44 14 objection.

10:59:44 15 (DTX Exhibit No. 369 was admitted into  
10:59:45 16 evidence.)

10:59:45 17 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

10:59:46 18 Q. Dr. Gonda, are you aware that UTC is currently  
10:59:49 19 working on a Treprostinil dry-powder formulation?

10:59:51 20 A. I am aware that they are working to together with  
10:59:55 21 Mannkind on such a product.

10:59:57 22 Q. Have you seen any documentation related to UTC's  
11:00:00 23 collaboration with Mannkind?

11:00:01 24 A. Yes, I have.

11:00:02 25 Q. Can we bring up DTX 389 in your binder.



Gonda - Direct

11:00:08 1 Is this the press release that you saw?

11:00:10 2 A. Yes, it is.

11:00:12 3 Q. And, Dr. Gonda, what type of agreement does UTC have  
11:00:19 4 with Mannkind with respect to the Treprostinil dry-powder  
11:00:22 5 formulations?

11:00:23 6 A. So, it is an exclusive license for this product  
11:00:28 7 Treprostinil Technosphere. That includes \$95 million in  
11:00:32 8 upfront and milestone payments. And also Mannkind is  
11:00:37 9 entitled to receive world royalties for the product once  
11:00:42 10 it's on the market.

11:00:42 11 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to enter in  
11:00:44 12 DTX 389 into evident evidence.

11:00:46 13 MR. CARSTEN: No objection.

11:00:47 14 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
11:00:48 15 objection.

11:00:48 16 (DTX Exhibit No. 389 was admitted into  
11:00:48 17 evidence.)

11:00:48 18 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

11:00:49 19 Q. Does UTC have an FDA approval for their dry-powder  
11:00:53 20 formulation that they're developing with Mannkind?

11:00:56 21 A. Not as far as I know.

11:00:59 22 Q. Are you aware of if Liquidia has tentative approval  
11:01:03 23 for their dry-powder formulation, LIQ861?

11:01:06 24 A. Yes, I am.

11:01:07 25 Q. And does Liquidia have tentative approval?

Gonda - Direct

11:01:10 1 A. Yes.

11:01:15 2 Q. Dr. Gonda, have you provided a definition of a person  
11:01:19 3 of ordinary skill in the art for the '793 patent as of  
11:01:24 4 May 2006?

11:01:25 5 A. Yes, I have.

11:01:25 6 Q. And have you prepared a demonstrative that addresses  
11:01:27 7 that?

11:01:27 8 A. Yes, I did.

11:01:28 9 Q. Can we bring up DDX 5.2, please. Thank you.

11:01:31 10 Dr. Gonda, is this your definition of a person  
11:01:35 11 of ordinary skill in the art?

11:01:35 12 A. It is.

11:01:37 13 Q. And how have you defined a POSA for the '793 patent  
11:01:41 14 as of May 2006 with respect to the formulation aspects?

11:01:45 15 A. So, with respect to the subject of the '793 patent,  
11:01:50 16 it would be somebody with a Ph.D. in pharmaceutical science  
11:01:53 17 or a related discipline like chemistry or medicinal  
11:01:59 18 chemistry plus two years of experience in pharmaceutical  
11:02:01 19 formulations including inhaled products. Alternatively, it  
11:02:05 20 could be somebody, again, with respect to the same issues,  
11:02:10 21 somebody who holds a master's in the same fields plus five  
11:02:12 22 years of experience in pharmaceutical formulations,  
11:02:15 23 including inhaled products.

11:02:18 24 Q. Did you apply this definition of a POSA in rendering  
11:02:21 25 your opinion in this case?

Gonda - Direct

11:02:22 1 A. Yes, I did.

11:02:24 2 Q. Are you aware that UTC's experts provided their own  
11:02:27 3 definition of a POSA for the '793 patent?

11:02:30 4 A. Yes, some of them did.

11:02:33 5 Q. Would your opinions change if the Court adopts UTC's  
11:02:39 6 definition of a POSA?

11:02:39 7 A. No.

11:02:43 8 Q. Could we turn to the '793 patent. And could we look  
11:02:46 9 at the first page, please -- or excuse me. Could we go to  
11:02:50 10 the claims, and that's JTX 3 for the record.

11:02:58 11 Generally, what does Claim 1 of the '793 patent  
11:03:01 12 relate to?

11:03:02 13 A. Well, Claim 1 is a claim that states a method of  
11:03:06 14 treating pulmonary hypertension comprising administering by  
11:03:09 15 inhalation to a human suffering from pulmonary hypertension  
11:03:13 16 a therapeutically effective single-event dose of a  
11:03:16 17 formulation comprising Treprostinil or a pharmaceutically  
11:03:21 18 acceptable salt of Treprostinil with an inhalation device  
11:03:26 19 wherein the therapeutically effective single-event dose  
11:03:29 20 comprises from 15 to 90 micrograms of Treprostinil or a  
11:03:33 21 pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof delivered in one to  
11:03:37 22 three breaths.

11:03:38 23 Q. In forming your opinions regarding powdered  
11:03:43 24 formulations of Treprostinil, are you requiring the claims  
11:03:47 25 of the '793 patent to meet some FDA requirement for

11:03:50 1 approval?

11:03:51 2 A. No.

11:03:57 3 Q. The claims do require a method of actually treating a  
11:04:00 4 patient with pulmonary hypertension, though; is that right?

11:04:02 5 A. Well, the claim says that it should be a  
11:04:06 6 therapeutically effective.

11:04:07 7 Q. For a pulmonary hypertension patient?

11:04:09 8 A. For -- that's correct. For the particular indication  
11:04:12 9 for pulmonary hypertension.

11:04:13 10 Q. If you take a look at Claim 1, there's a phrase  
11:04:17 11 "formulation comprising Treprostinil." Do you see that?

11:04:19 12 A. Yes, I do.

11:04:20 13 Q. What types of formulations are encompassed by the  
11:04:24 14 formulations formulation comprising Treprostinil?

11:04:29 15 A. So, this is a very general claim that covers any  
11:04:32 16 formulation.

11:04:33 17 Q. And what types of formulations would that include?

11:04:36 18 A. Well, it would be liquid formulations or solid  
11:04:40 19 formulations.

11:04:40 20 Q. And with respect to solid formulations, would that  
11:04:43 21 include powders?

11:04:44 22 A. Yes, of course.

11:04:49 23 Q. Further down in Claim 1, you it you had mentioned  
11:04:52 24 that it refers to an inhalation device. Do you see that?

11:04:54 25 A. Yes, I do.

Gonda - Direct

11:04:57 1 Q. And what types of inhalation devices would be covered  
11:05:00 2 by Claim 1?

11:05:01 3 A. Again, this is a very general claim, and the way that  
11:05:04 4 the POSA would understand it, it would be any formulation.

11:05:08 5 Q. Would it include the four inhalation devices that you  
11:05:13 6 expressed in the beginning of your testimony?

11:05:15 7 A. Yes, it would.

11:05:16 8 Q. That would be a nebulizer, pressure metered-dose  
11:05:18 9 inhaler or soft mist inhaler and a dry-powder inhaler?

11:05:21 10 A. That is correct.

11:05:29 11 Q. Now I'd like to discuss your opinion regarding  
11:05:32 12 whether the inventors had possession of a dry-powder  
11:05:36 13 formulation of Treprostinil as of 2006.

11:05:43 14 Generally speaking, Dr. Gonda, what's your  
11:05:46 15 opinion as to whether a POSA, a person of ordinary skill in  
11:05:50 16 the art, reading the '793 patent would understand if the  
11:05:56 17 inventors were in possession of a dry-powder formulation of  
11:06:00 18 Treprostinil?

11:06:04 19 A. A POSA would have concluded, in my -- in my view,  
11:06:08 20 that they were not in possession of the invention.

11:06:10 21 Q. And why is that?

11:06:11 22 A. Well, there is no evidence of that in the patent.

11:06:15 23 Q. Now, did you read the '793 patent in rendering your  
11:06:18 24 opinions?

11:06:19 25 A. Yes, I did.

Gonda - Direct

11:06:20 1 Q. Does the '793 patent contain a mention of inhaled  
11:06:24 2 powders or a dry-powder inhaler?

11:06:26 3 A. Yes, it does.

11:06:27 4 Q. Can we turn to Column 7, lines 22 to 26 at page 230  
11:06:34 5 of the '793. And can we blow that up, please, Derrick?  
11:06:39 6 Thank you.

11:06:39 7 Is this the reference to powders and dry-powder  
11:06:43 8 inhalers you previously mentioned?

11:06:44 9 A. That is the reference in the specifications.

11:06:48 10 Q. And just briefly, what does that '793 patent state?

11:06:51 11 A. It says the inhalation device can be also a  
11:06:55 12 dry-powder inhaler. In such case, the respiratory drug is  
11:06:59 13 inhaled in solid formulation, usually in the form of a  
11:07:03 14 powder with particle size less than ten micrometers in  
11:07:07 15 diameter or less than five micrometers in diameter.

11:07:11 16 Q. Other than these two sentences, does the '793 patent  
11:07:15 17 contain any other discussion of a dry-powder or a dry-powder  
11:07:18 18 inhaler?

11:07:19 19 A. Only in the claims.

11:07:21 20 Q. But not in the body of the patent itself?

11:07:23 21 A. No.

11:07:26 22 Q. Other than these two -- do these two sentences tell a  
11:07:30 23 POSA how to make a dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil?

11:07:33 24 A. No, they do not.

11:07:35 25 Q. Do they tell a POSA what dry-powder inhalers would be

Gonda - Direct

11:07:40 1 suitable for patients with pulmonary hypertension?

11:07:42 2 A. No, it does not.

11:07:49 3 Q. Do you recall if there are examples in the '793  
11:07:51 4 patent?

11:07:51 5 A. Yes, there are examples.

11:07:54 6 Q. Can we go to Example 1? It's the bottom of Column 8.  
11:07:58 7 Again, also on Page 20.

11:08:00 8 Can you blow that up, please, Derrick. Thank  
11:08:04 9 you.

11:08:04 10 What type of inhaler did Example 1 utilize?

11:08:07 11 A. It was a soft mist inhaler.

11:08:11 12 Q. And what type of formulation is used in a soft mist  
11:08:15 13 inhaler?

11:08:16 14 A. It would be a liquid, typically, an aqueous solution  
11:08:20 15 of the drug.

11:08:20 16 Q. It would not -- a soft mist inhaler would not use a  
11:08:24 17 powder; is that correct?

11:08:25 18 A. No.

11:08:26 19 Q. Can you go to Example 2. It starts at Column 12.  
11:08:32 20 And could you blow that up, please?

11:08:37 21 Dr. Gonda, what type of inhaler was utilized in  
11:08:40 22 Example 2 of the patent?

11:08:42 23 A. Example 2 used an ultrasonic nebulizer.

11:08:48 24 Q. And what type of formulation is used in an ultrasonic  
11:08:52 25 nebulizer?

Gonda - Direct

11:08:53 1 A. It is, again, a liquid, and it can typically -- an  
11:08:56 2 aqueous of the drug in water.

11:09:02 3 Q. And can you use a powdered formulation in an  
11:09:04 4 ultrasonic nebulizer?

11:09:06 5 A. No, you cannot.

11:09:12 6 Q. Did either of these examples mention the use of a  
11:09:16 7 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil?

11:09:18 8 A. No, they don't.

11:09:20 9 Q. Do these either of these examples actually administer  
11:09:23 10 a dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil?

11:09:25 11 A. No, they don't.

11:09:27 12 Q. Do either of these examples utilize a dry-powder  
11:09:30 13 inhaler?

11:09:31 14 A. No.

11:09:39 15 Q. Now, did you consider testimony from the inventors of  
11:09:43 16 the '793 patent in forming your opinions?

11:09:46 17 A. I considered three testimonies in this -- regarding  
11:09:51 18 this from Drs. Roscigno, Rubin, and Seeger.

11:09:56 19 Q. And what did their testimony -- or how did their  
11:10:01 20 testimony impact your opinions in this case?

11:10:04 21 A. Well, they confirmed that these investors -- these  
11:10:11 22 inventors did not have possession of the dry-powder device  
11:10:15 23 or dry-powder formulation.

11:10:17 24 Q. And how did they confirm that they did not have  
11:10:20 25 possession of a dry-powder formulation or a dry-powder



11:10:22 1 inhaler?

11:10:23 2 A. So Dr. Seeger and -- Dr. Seeger and Dr. Rubin, in my  
11:10:29 3 recollection, said that they did not -- they explicitly said  
11:10:34 4 that they did not work or have possession of the invention.  
11:10:39 5 And Dr. Roscigno could not remember. That's my  
11:10:42 6 recollection.

11:10:43 7 Q. Did you see any evidence that the inventors of the  
11:10:46 8 '793 patent were actually working on a dry-powder  
11:10:50 9 formulation of Treprostinil as of May 2006?

11:10:55 10 A. No, I didn't see any evidence that they would have  
11:10:59 11 worked on a dry-powder inhaler.

11:11:01 12 Q. Did you see any evidence that the inventors of the  
11:11:04 13 '793 patent were actually working on trying to use a  
11:11:07 14 dry-powder inhaler for inhaled therapies of Treprostinil to  
11:11:13 15 treat pulmonary hypertension patients as of May 2006?

11:11:17 16 A. I couldn't see any evidence of it, no.

11:11:22 17 Q. Now, do you understand that United Therapeutics has  
11:11:24 18 asserted claims in addition to Claim 1 against Liquidia?

11:11:28 19 A. Yes, I'm aware of that.

11:11:30 20 Q. Can we go back to the claims at the end.

11:11:33 21 Do you understand that UT has also asserted  
11:11:37 22 Claims 4, 6, 7, and 8?

11:11:40 23 A. Yes, I know that.

11:11:41 24 Q. And do Claims 4, 6, 7, and 8 depend from Claim 1?

11:11:45 25 A. Yes, they are the dependent claims.

Gonda - Direct

11:11:48 1 Q. Based on this dependency, do Claims 4, 6, 7, and 8  
11:11:52 2 require either a dry-powder formulation or a dry-powder  
11:11:56 3 inhaler?

11:11:56 4 A. So, Claims 4, 6, and 7 specifically require a  
11:12:02 5 dry-powder formulation. Claim 8 is a very general claim  
11:12:07 6 that covers, also, dry-powder formulations.

11:12:10 7 Q. The opinions you provided with respect to Claim 1 and  
11:12:14 8 your opinion that the inventors, a POSA, would not consider  
11:12:18 9 the inventors to be in possession of a dry-powder  
11:12:21 10 formulation of Treprostinil for the treatment of pulmonary  
11:12:26 11 hypertension, would that apply to Claims 4, 6, 7, and 8 as  
11:12:29 12 well?

11:12:29 13 A. Yes.

11:12:31 14 Q. I'd like to move to your second opinion, which  
11:12:37 15 relates to whether the '793 patent would enable a POSA to  
11:12:45 16 make a dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil for treating  
11:12:49 17 pulmonary hypertension in May 2006. Can you generally  
11:12:54 18 describe what your opinion is with respect to that aspect.

11:12:58 19 A. Yes.

11:13:00 20 Q. Could you please describe that.

11:13:01 21 A. Yes. Sorry. Yes. I don't think that the patent,  
11:13:08 22 the claims have been met.

11:13:10 23 Q. And why is that?

11:13:11 24 A. I see -- I see that it would have been very  
11:13:19 25 difficult. It would have required undue experimentation to

Gonda - Direct

11:13:23 1 actually develop those kind of products.

11:13:26 2 Q. And what do you mean by "undue experimentation"?

11:13:29 3 A. By "undue experimentation," I mean that it would take  
11:13:32 4 a group, a team, a fairly large team of experts in different  
11:13:37 5 fields and a number of years to develop the formulation and  
11:13:43 6 device that would be consistent with Claim 1.

11:13:47 7 Q. Have you prepared a demonstrative that describes the  
11:13:50 8 various parameters and processes POSAs would need to  
11:13:53 9 undertake to develop a dry-powder formulation of  
11:13:56 10 Treprostinil for the treatment of pulmonary hypertension?

11:13:58 11 A. Yes, I have.

11:14:01 12 Q. Can we pull up DDX 5.3, please.

11:14:03 13 Is this the demonstrative?

11:14:04 14 A. Yes, it is.

11:14:07 15 Q. Could you describe what this demonstrative depicts.

11:14:11 16 A. Yes. So this demonstrative, in a very sort of  
11:14:16 17 schematic way, depicts a -- what a POSA would do in 2006 in  
11:14:24 18 order to develop the kind of product that is described in  
11:14:28 19 Claim 1, and specifically a powder product. So, in the  
11:14:33 20 first place, a POSA would have need to find -- to make the  
11:14:38 21 active pharmaceutical ingredient, which in this case would  
11:14:41 22 be Treprostinil or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of  
11:14:46 23 Treprostinil, that would be suitable to make into a  
11:14:51 24 dry-powder inhaler. So you would look at the physical and  
11:14:56 25 chemical stability of that you would be -- you would, of

Gonda - Direct

11:14:59 1 course, look to prior literature, and prior literature  
11:15:02 2 taught that you would have to pick, preferably, a material  
11:15:06 3 with a fairly high melting point. You would look then at  
11:15:06 4 whether the material can exist in different solid form being  
11:15:15 5 in the known crystalline, or various types of crystals, or  
11:15:17 6 maybe some hydrates, or solvates in the material. And you  
11:15:22 7 would then check whether those materials are physically and  
11:15:28 8 chemically stable at the time of manufacturing, during  
11:15:32 9 storage, during manufacturing of the final product, and then  
11:15:36 10 during storage and used in real life.

11:15:39 11 Q. So and that's the first box you had API?

11:15:41 12 A. That's the very first thing. You would be looking  
11:15:44 13 for a suitable form of the active pharmaceutical ingredient  
11:15:48 14 that, based on the prior art, as I mentioned hygroscopicity,  
11:15:52 15 stable solid form, would be suitable for that kind of  
11:15:56 16 product.

11:15:56 17 Q. Now, Dr. Gonda, I'd like you to talk now -- that's  
11:15:59 18 your first box API. What is your second box, carrier  
11:16:02 19 excipient relates to developing dry-powder formulations of  
11:16:06 20 Treprostinil?

11:16:06 21 A. So, just to explain Treprostinil is a very potent  
11:16:10 22 drug. In other words, you use a very small quantity. For  
11:16:15 23 example, instructions. Therefore, you cannot use just  
11:16:18 24 Treprostinil just alone. You have to dilute it somehow.  
11:16:19 25 You have to put it into a bulking agent, which we call a

Gonda - Direct

11:16:22 1 carrier or an excipient. So you would then have to pick a  
11:16:28 2 carrier that you would think or you would know is safe;  
11:16:31 3 right? And again, stable during manufacturing and during  
11:16:37 4 storage. And you would then take that and check whether  
11:16:42 5 that carrier is compatible physically and chemically at the  
11:16:46 6 time of mixing them, during manufacturing, right, and then  
11:16:52 7 during storage and -- and you would also check whether  
11:16:56 8 during, you know, real use that kind of a mixture could be  
11:17:01 9 used and can be stable.

11:17:02 10 Q. And now after you look at the API and the carrier,  
11:17:07 11 what is your third box at the top, inhalation device? How  
11:17:09 12 does that relate to developing a dry-powder formulation of  
11:17:12 13 Treprostinil for treating pulmonary hypertension?

11:17:14 14 A. So, we would have known from prior art, you know,  
11:17:18 15 which was, you know, started up with the article by  
11:17:23 16 Dr. Clark that you would need to be sure that the device  
11:17:28 17 that you select for this can be actually used in a proper  
11:17:31 18 way by the patients and that the patients would be able to  
11:17:35 19 inhale with sufficient effort, meaning how quickly can they  
11:17:41 20 inhale, what is the acceleration, what is the peak flow that  
11:17:45 21 you get and how much volume, how much volume they could  
11:17:48 22 generate with a particular device. So you have to make sure  
11:17:52 23 that you have the device that would be capable of delivering  
11:17:55 24 dose of the right particle size distribution to the patients  
11:17:59 25 with the disease that they're going to be treating.

Gonda - Direct

11:18:02 1 Q. And as of May 2006, a POSA looking to make a  
11:18:05 2 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil to treat pulmonary  
11:18:09 3 hypertension, they would take into consideration these three  
11:18:11 4 factors?

11:18:14 5 A. Yes, they would.

11:18:15 6 Q. Now, in terms of testing the device in your third box  
11:18:20 7 at the top, with patients, would the drug or the powder  
11:18:24 8 formulation actually have to be in the device to do that?

11:18:27 9 A. No. You still -- you wouldn't need to check the  
11:18:30 10 capability of the device in the patients with the drug in  
11:18:34 11 the device, no.

11:18:35 12 Q. And did the '793 patent provide any information  
11:18:39 13 regarding any of these factors as they applied to making a  
11:18:44 14 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil for a pulmonary  
11:18:47 15 hypertension?

11:18:47 16 A. No, no it did not.

11:18:49 17 Q. Now, do you know that UTC has enlisted an expert of  
11:18:55 18 Dr. Smyth in this case?

11:18:57 19 A. Yes, I know.

11:18:58 20 Q. And do you understand that Dr. Smyth conducted  
11:19:01 21 testing to try to make a dry-powder formulation of  
11:19:03 22 Treprostinil?

11:19:03 23 A. Yes, he did.

11:19:06 24 Q. Generally, what type of testing did Dr. Smyth  
11:19:08 25 conduct?

Gonda - Direct

11:19:09 1 A. So, I mean, I can describe briefly what it is. So  
11:19:15 2 Dr. Smyth did not have to source or make the different forms  
11:19:22 3 of the active pharmaceutical ingredient he received them  
11:19:25 4 from the other documents. And there was three types of  
11:19:31 5 solids. They were Treprostinil, the acid itself, the drug  
11:19:36 6 itself there were Treprostinil sodium, and then he -- which  
11:19:40 7 is a salt. And then he had to search for which was  
11:19:46 8 diethanolamine, the salt form, or salt of Treprostinil. And  
11:19:50 9 then he took those three forms and he milled them, and he  
11:19:55 10 picked the most common and widely used excipient as of  
11:20:02 11 May 2006, which was lactose, lactose powder. He then  
11:20:08 12 blended, mixed, the lactose powder with these three  
11:20:14 13 different types of solid forms of Treprostinil. He then  
11:20:17 14 took an inhalation device and then he put all of these  
11:20:23 15 things together, went into the laboratory, and in the  
11:20:27 16 laboratory, he tested the dose delivered and the particle  
11:20:30 17 size distribution of the -- of -- so, essentially, those  
11:20:33 18 were the elements of the experiments that Dr. Professor  
11:20:37 19 Smyth conducted.

11:20:38 20 Q. And in your opinion, do those experiments establish  
11:20:42 21 that as of May 2006, a POSA would have been able to, based  
11:20:46 22 on the '793 patent, make a dry-powder formulation of  
11:20:50 23 Treprostinil for treatment of pulmonary hypertension?

11:20:52 24 A. No, not according to Claim 1. No.

11:20:57 25 Q. Let's talk about one of the active ingredients or the

Gonda - Direct

11:21:00 1 APIs that Dr. Smyth used, Treprostinil sodium. Does

11:21:04 2 Treprostinil sodium have any characteristics that would

11:21:07 3 impact its ability to be used as a dry-powder?

11:21:10 4 A. Yes. It's one of the properties which is mentioned

11:21:15 5 in prior art that the POSA would have to be careful about,

11:21:18 6 and that is hygroscopicity.

11:21:20 7 Q. What is hygro -- hygro --

11:21:22 8 A. Hygroscopicity.

11:21:24 9 Q. What is hygroscopicity?

11:21:27 10 A. So hygroscopicity is the property, the attribute,

11:21:31 11 whereby a solid material would have a tendency to pick up

11:21:35 12 water from the environment and incorporate water in the

11:21:40 13 structure. In the case of Treprostinil sodium, the property

11:21:45 14 is actually so, so extensive that if you pick up -- you will

11:21:51 15 pick up so much water that in ordinary room conditions, if

11:21:54 16 you leave it sitting on the bench. It was not to be --

11:21:59 17 meaning that it picks up so much water that it actually

11:22:02 18 forms a liquid.

11:22:03 19 Q. Now, was Dr. Smyth able to make a dry-powder

11:22:05 20 formulation of Treprostinil sodium?

11:22:09 21 A. No, he failed in his laboratory to do so.

11:22:13 22 Q. And why did he fail?

11:22:13 23 A. Well, I think that it was because it was so

11:22:17 24 hygroscopic that eventually picked up so much water that the

11:22:20 25 product failed.



Gonda - Direct

11:22:21 1 Q. And did Dr. Smyth note that in his expert report and  
11:22:25 2 notebooks, the hygroscopicity of Treprostinil sodium?

11:22:29 3 A. Well, he did mention that he was unable to control  
11:22:32 4 relative humidity to the extent that he would have been able  
11:22:35 5 to make -- to make the product.

11:22:37 6 Q. Now, if Treprostinil sodium is hygroscopic at room  
11:22:43 7 temperature, is it physically stable at room temperature?

11:22:46 8 A. Well, based on what I know, and for a POSA would have  
11:22:51 9 known or would have found out by experimentation, it would  
11:22:53 10 not have been stable.

11:22:55 11 Q. And does Dr. Smyth's experiments establish that?

11:22:58 12 A. Well, the fact that he failed to make a formulation  
11:23:03 13 indicates to me that, yes, it confirmed that.

11:23:05 14 Q. Can we go back to JTX 3, please, the '793 patent.

11:23:09 15 And Column 6, do you see do you see a structure  
11:23:14 16 there, Dr. Gonda?

11:23:15 17 A. Yes, I do.

11:23:17 18 Q. And what is that structure?

11:23:18 19 A. It is Treprostinil sodium.

11:23:21 20 Q. So within the '793 patent -- excuse me -- is this a  
11:23:25 21 Treprostinil sodium that Dr. Smyth failed to make a  
11:23:30 22 dry-powder formulation out of?

11:23:31 23 A. This is the chemical formula because this doesn't  
11:23:36 24 tell me anything about the solid structure of this compound,  
11:23:39 25 but it's the same formula.

Gonda - Direct

11:23:40 1 Q. Now, you had mentioned that Liquidia used  
11:23:43 2 Treprostinil sodium for their dry-powder formulation;  
11:23:46 3 correct?

11:23:46 4 A. Yes, that's correct.

11:23:48 5 Q. And how were they able to make a dry-powder  
11:23:50 6 formulation when Dr. Smyth could not?

11:23:52 7 A. Well, they -- they overcome the problem by using  
11:23:56 8 completely different process, so they didn't mill the  
11:24:00 9 Treprostinil sodium and mix it with lactose. Instead, they  
11:24:04 10 actually dissolved Treprostinil sodium. They put it into a  
11:24:08 11 solution, and then they added a number of other excipients,  
11:24:13 12 a number of other substances, to the formulation. Then they  
11:24:17 13 pull the formulation using the proprietary PRINT Process.  
11:24:21 14 They evaporate the formulation then it forms a solid. They  
11:24:25 15 dry it, and then they use the small particles in their  
11:24:28 16 product.

11:24:28 17 Q. Was Liquidia's PRINT Process available to a person of  
11:24:32 18 ordinary skill in the art as of May 2006?

11:24:33 19 A. I -- I don't think so.

11:24:38 20 Q. Now I'd like to talk about the second form of  
11:24:44 21 Treprostinil Dr. Smyth used, Treprostinil free acid. Okay.  
11:24:49 22 Did you consider any documents discussing the  
11:24:52 23 characteristics of Treprostinil free acid that might impact  
11:24:56 24 its ability to be used in a dry-powder formulation?

11:25:01 25 A. Yes, I did.

Gonda - Direct

11:25:02 1 Q. Can we go to DTX 674, please.

11:25:06 2 Is this a document you reviewed?

11:25:07 3 A. Yes. It's a highly confidential document from United  
11:25:10 4 Therapeutics.

11:25:11 5 Q. And do you understand there it says salts of  
11:25:15 6 Treprostinil and UT-15. Do you understand what UT-15 is?

11:25:19 7 A. UT-15 is Treprostinil.

11:25:21 8 Q. And is that Treprostinil free acid?

11:25:23 9 A. Well, Treprostinil is the free acid, that's right.

11:25:28 10 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to move DTX  
11:25:29 11 674 into evidence.

11:25:31 12 MR. CARSTEN: No objection, Your Honor.

11:25:31 13 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

11:25:33 14 (DTX Exhibit No. 674 was admitted into  
11:25:33 15 evidence.)

11:25:33 16 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

11:25:33 17 Q. Can you please turn to Page 4 of 291. And what  
11:25:37 18 does -- there's a section titled Initial Development at  
11:25:40 19 United Therapeutics. Do you see that?

11:25:42 20 A. Yes, I do.

11:25:43 21 Q. What does this paragraph tell you about the  
11:25:46 22 properties of UT-15, the Treprostinil free acid?

11:25:49 23 A. So just to put it into context, it says that already  
11:25:54 24 in 2001, United Therapeutics began a project to determine a  
11:25:57 25 suitable oral formulation of Treprostinil. So they were

Gonda - Direct

11:26:00 1 trying to make tablets and also the solid form of -- for  
11:26:05 2 making tablets. And it says that because of the instability  
11:26:08 3 and propensity of UT-15 free acid, meaning Treprostinil, to  
11:26:14 4 form dimers at ambient temperature, it was thought that a  
11:26:17 5 salt form of UT-15 might be more stable.

11:26:21 6 Q. Now, would a person of ordinary skill in the art as  
11:26:23 7 of May 2006 want to use a form of Treprostinil that would  
11:26:28 8 form dimers at room temperature or ambient temperature?

11:26:30 9 A. No, no. A POSA wouldn't want to use that kind of a  
11:26:34 10 form because it's -- it's a chemically different form, and  
11:26:38 11 it could cause efficacy problems as well as safety problems.

11:26:43 12 Q. Now, outside of this document, if a POSA had  
11:26:47 13 Treprostinil free acid, a sample of Treprostinil free acid,  
11:26:52 14 and they were determining whether they can use it to make a  
11:26:57 15 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil, what would they do  
11:27:01 16 first?

11:27:03 17 A. So that would be the very first stage, selecting a  
11:27:07 18 suitable solid form of Treprostinil. You would want to make  
11:27:11 19 sure that that substance is stable, physically and  
11:27:16 20 chemically, during processing and during storage.

11:27:20 21 Q. And if a POSA conducted the experiments that you  
11:27:24 22 described in your demonstrative on Treprostinil free acid in  
11:27:28 23 trying to make a dry-powder formulation, what would they  
11:27:30 24 find out?

11:27:31 25 A. Well, I expect that they would have found out the

Gonda - Direct

11:27:34 1 same thing as United Therapeutics did, that -- that even  
11:27:39 2 during storage at room temperature, they would form dimers  
11:27:43 3 of Treprostinil, which a POSA would not wish to have in  
11:27:47 4 their active pharmaceutical ingredient.

11:27:49 5 Q. Now, did Dr. Smyth conduct studies on Treprostinil  
11:27:52 6 free acid to determine whether it would remain stable at the  
11:27:59 7 temperatures for processing and actually making a  
11:28:02 8 Treprostinil free acid powder form?

11:28:04 9 A. I didn't see any experiments to -- to that perform  
11:28:10 10 that.

11:28:10 11 Q. Referring to that, did Dr. Smyth process the  
11:28:14 12 Treprostinil free acid in a particular way to mix it with  
11:28:18 13 the lactose that you described?

11:28:19 14 A. Yes. He used he first -- he first made it into jet  
11:28:25 15 milling. First made it into small particles using jet  
11:28:29 16 milling and then he mixed those particles with lactose.

11:28:32 17 Q. And does jet milling result in micronizing the  
11:28:36 18 Treprostinil free acid?

11:28:37 19 A. Yes. Jet milling is using the energy of compressed  
11:28:41 20 air to -- to make smaller particles from big particle, yes.

11:28:52 21 Q. I'd like to talk about the last Treprostinil form  
11:28:56 22 that Dr. Smyth used in his experiments, Treprostinil  
11:29:01 23 diethanolamine. Do you recall whether Dr. Smyth also mixed  
11:29:08 24 Treprostinil diethanolamine with lactose?

11:29:11 25 A. Yes, he did.

Gonda - Direct

11:29:16 1 Q. And as of May 2006, would a POSA have actually  
11:29:19 2 selected lactose to use with Treprostinil diethanolamine?

11:29:25 3 A. Probably not.

11:29:25 4 Q. And why not?

11:29:26 5 A. Well, a POSA should have known that lactose reacts  
11:29:31 6 with amines by a so-called Maillard reaction.

11:29:38 7 M-A-I-L-L-A-R-D reaction. And therefore, a POSA would have  
11:29:40 8 been reluctant to use lactose with -- with that kind of a  
11:29:46 9 salt.

11:29:46 10 Q. Is Treprostinil diethanolamine an amine?

11:29:50 11 A. Yes, it is.

11:29:51 12 Q. Is there any literature as of May 2006 that discusses  
11:29:55 13 this Maillard reaction that you mentioned?

11:29:58 14 A. Yes, there is.

11:29:58 15 Q. Can we go to DTX 481.

11:30:01 16 Is this the reference you were referring to,  
11:30:06 17 Dr. Gonda?

11:30:06 18 A. Yes, it is.

11:30:07 19 Q. And when was this published?

11:30:09 20 A. This was published in 1998, I think is when it was,  
11:30:15 21 yes.

11:30:15 22 Q. And what is the title?

11:30:16 23 A. It's called sorry, I misspelled it. It's double L.  
11:30:22 24 I'm sorry.

11:30:22 25 Q. That's fine.

Gonda - Direct

11:30:23 1 A. Maillard reaction of lactose and fluoxetine  
11:30:26 2 hydrochloride, a secondary amine.

11:30:31 3 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to enter DTX  
11:30:35 4 481 into evidence.

11:30:36 5 MR. CARSTEN: No objection.

11:30:36 6 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
11:30:38 7 objection.

11:30:38 8 (DTX Exhibit No. 481 was admitted into  
11:30:38 9 evidence.)

11:30:38 10 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

11:30:39 11 Q. Did you review this document, this reference,  
11:30:41 12 regarding the compatibility of Treprostinil diethanolamine  
11:30:44 13 with lactose?

11:30:44 14 A. Yes, I did.

11:30:46 15 Q. Can you can turn to the top right column of Page 1.

11:30:50 16 And what does this say with respect to amines  
11:30:54 17 and compounds like lactose?

11:30:56 18 A. Well, it says that earlier on, it was believed that  
11:31:01 19 only primary aromatic amine were capable of this reaction,  
11:31:04 20 but subsequent research has shown that near nearly all  
11:31:08 21 primary and secondary amines, aromatic or aliphatic, are  
11:31:12 22 capable of this reaction.

11:31:13 23 Q. What type of amine is Treprostinil diethanolamine?

11:31:16 24 A. It's an aliphatic type.

11:31:19 25 Q. And is it a primary or a secondary aliphatic?

Gonda - Direct

11:31:22 1 A. Sorry, it's a secondary. Secondary aliphatic.

11:31:27 2 Q. And what would this reference teach a POSA as of 2006  
11:31:31 3 about combining a secondary aliphatic amine like  
11:31:37 4 diethanolamine with lactose?

11:31:39 5 A. It says that -- that there was a likelihood, and  
11:31:46 6 fairly high likelihood, that such a reaction would take  
11:31:49 7 place.

11:31:49 8 Q. Now, as part of your demonstrative discussing  
11:31:53 9 carriers, you mentioned that POSAs would conduct studies to  
11:31:57 10 determine compatibility of the API they selected and the  
11:32:02 11 carriers or the excipients that they wanted to use in the  
11:32:05 12 powder formulation.

11:32:06 13 Do you recall that?

11:32:06 14 A. Yes, I do.

11:32:07 15 Q. Did Dr. Smyth conduct any experiments assessing the  
11:32:11 16 compatibility of diethanolamine with lactose?

11:32:15 17 A. No, he didn't. And just to put it into context, I  
11:32:19 18 mean, all of the experiments that I, in my demonstrative,  
11:32:23 19 would be done by a POSA even before going into animal  
11:32:28 20 experiments. So this would be way ahead of any kind of  
11:32:30 21 clinical trials. You wouldn't want to take a risk that your  
11:32:33 22 product was unlikely to be suitable for this patient  
11:32:39 23 population before you could even go into patients, you would  
11:32:41 24 have to test it in animals for safety. So, a POSA would  
11:32:45 25 really want to do all of this work before even conducting



Gonda - Direct

11:32:49 1 animal experiments. And Professor Smyth didn't look at the  
11:32:53 2 compatibility of lactose with this particular salt.

11:32:58 3 Q. Did he look at the compatibility with lactose in any  
11:33:01 4 of the forms of Treprostinil that he studied?

11:33:03 5 A. No, he did not do such studies, no.

11:33:07 6 Q. Is --

11:33:07 7 A. He did not do it at the beginning. He did not do it  
11:33:10 8 during storage or after manufacturing or under conditions of  
11:33:15 9 use by the patient.

11:33:15 10 Q. Now I'd like to talk about the last part of your  
11:33:18 11 demonstrative, the device. When selecting a dry-powder  
11:33:25 12 inhaler, what would a -- what -- would a POSA need to know  
11:33:31 13 the patient population the device is to be used for?

11:33:35 14 A. Yes.

11:33:37 15 Q. And why is that important?

11:33:38 16 A. Well, because for dry-powder inhalers, it is the --  
11:33:44 17 the interaction of the patient with the device and, in  
11:33:48 18 particular, how much air flow, how far, how -- you know, how  
11:33:53 19 hard they can inhale on the inhaler, and embodies the volume  
11:33:57 20 of the air that will impact the dose. So a POSA would want  
11:34:00 21 to know what is the interaction between the patient and the  
11:34:03 22 device before testing the formulation with the device in the  
11:34:09 23 laboratory in order to make sure that the device is tested  
11:34:12 24 in the laboratory and at the correct conditions.

11:34:14 25 Q. If a pulmonary hypertension patient could use a

Gonda - Direct

11:34:17 1 nebulizer like TYVASO uses, does that mean they could use a  
11:34:21 2 dry-powder inhaler?

11:34:22 3 A. No.

11:34:26 4 Q. Are you aware of any publications that discuss the  
11:34:28 5 use of dry-powder inhalers in pulmonary hypertension  
11:34:31 6 patients?

11:34:31 7 A. There are two recent papers on the subjects. They  
11:34:36 8 are -- they were both published in 2021.

11:34:38 9 Q. Let's look at one of them, DTX 468. Is this one of  
11:34:44 10 the references, Dr. Gonda?

11:34:44 11 A. Yes, it is.

11:34:46 12 Q. And what is the title?

11:34:47 13 A. It is Inspiratory Flow Patterns with Dry-Powder  
11:34:51 14 Inhalers of Low and Medium Flow Resistance in Patients with  
11:34:56 15 Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension.

11:34:57 16 Q. And who's the last named author?

11:35:00 17 A. The last named author is Dr. Aaron B. Waxman.

11:35:05 18 Q. And is he the Dr. Waxman that we heard earlier today?

11:35:07 19 A. I believe it is.

11:35:10 20 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, I'd like to move DTX  
11:35:12 21 468 into evidence.

11:35:13 22 MR. CARSTEN: No objection Your Honor.

11:35:14 23 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

11:35:16 24 (DTX Exhibit No. 468 was admitted into  
11:35:16 25 evidence.)

11:35:16 1 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

11:35:18 2 Q. Can you turn to the abstract, please.

11:35:21 3 And what was the goal of the study conducted by  
11:35:26 4 Dr. Waxman and his colleagues?

11:35:28 5 A. So, the investigators wanted to see whether two  
11:35:34 6 dry-powder inhalers, when used by patients with pulmonary  
11:35:39 7 arterial hypertension -- they wanted to know what is the  
11:35:44 8 inspiratory flow pattern, meaning the inspiratory flow rate,  
11:35:47 9 the acceleration of inspiration, and the spike body, the  
11:35:52 10 amount of air that they take, how they could do it, what  
11:35:57 11 were these results in the patients that were intended for  
11:36:00 12 the therapy with these dry-powder inhalers.

11:36:03 13 Q. Okay. And there's -- with respect to the inhalers,  
11:36:06 14 the dry-powder inhalers, if you can highlight that, there's  
11:36:11 15 two mentioned, RS01-L and RS01-M. What does the L stand  
11:36:20 16 for?

11:36:20 17 A. The L stands for low resistance.

11:36:24 18 Q. And what does that mean?

11:36:25 19 A. So, as Dr. Clark mentioned in 1995, different devices  
11:36:30 20 will have different resistance. And so they will require  
11:36:34 21 different kind of collaboration, different effort, and maybe  
11:36:37 22 different volumes. So, the RSOL means it is a  
11:36:42 23 low-resistance device that one in the art obtains, so they  
11:36:46 24 can test both in order to see how well the patients can use  
11:36:48 25 them.

Gonda - Direct

11:36:49 1 Q. So in more simplistic terms, what does it mean to  
11:36:51 2 have a device that has low resistance versus a device that  
11:36:55 3 has moderate resistance?

11:36:58 4 A. Okay. So if I tried to breathe through this, that's  
11:37:01 5 high resistance. If I try to breathe through that, that's  
11:37:04 6 low resistance, so there is -- it's easier to breathe  
11:37:07 7 through a low-resistance device.

11:37:12 8 Q. What type of patient -- oh, you mentioned -- did  
11:37:15 9 Dr. Waxman, in his study, look at pulmonary arterial  
11:37:19 10 hypertension patients?

11:37:19 11 A. Yes.

11:37:21 12 Q. Can we turn to the Table 2 on Page 4. And can you  
11:37:26 13 blow that up, please, Derrick. Thank you.

11:37:29 14 Now, what does Dr. Waxman and his colleagues'  
11:37:33 15 results show with respect to pulmonary arterial hypertension  
11:37:38 16 patients and the use of dry-powder inhalers?

11:37:40 17 A. Yeah, so just to explain, so this was looking at the  
11:37:45 18 complete inspiratory flow pattern in patients with pulmonary  
11:37:52 19 arterial hypertension. There were 20 patients.

11:37:54 20 When we look at the top row, below the title are  
11:38:00 21 two devices, RS01-L, low resistance, and RS01-M, which is  
11:38:06 22 the medium resistance, so these devices are different.  
11:38:09 23 Different resistance. And if you take a quick look between  
11:38:14 24 the two columns, you will see that the results in the two  
11:38:18 25 columns are different.

Gonda - Direct

11:38:19 1 Q. Could you focus in on inspiratory effort and inhaled  
11:38:22 2 volume?

11:38:22 3 A. Sure. So. The inspiratory effort, which is the  
11:38:28 4 fact, you know, how hard you can inhale is that particular  
11:38:33 5 variable there. And we see that for the RS01, the low  
11:38:37 6 resistance, it is 2.6 kilopascals plus minus 1.2, which is  
11:38:43 7 the term of deviation, standard deviation, meaning that the  
11:38:46 8 patients who has more bigger problems with their lungs could  
11:38:51 9 only inhale at an even lower. This is -- the mean volume is  
11:38:56 10 2.6 minus 1.2 would be one point -- would be 1.4. So, they  
11:39:02 11 could only have a relatively low effort.

11:39:06 12 And vice versa, the people who are the  
11:39:09 13 healthiest would be able to do it -- be better than that.  
11:39:12 14 So, it just -- and knowing a little bit about -- with normal  
11:39:17 15 healthy individuals, this is much lower than the result.

11:39:20 16 Q. Where it says inhaled volume, what does that inhaled  
11:39:24 17 volume mean?

11:39:24 18 A. So, the inhaled volume is the total volume that the  
11:39:27 19 patients would be inhaling through the device. So, if they  
11:39:29 20 get the device and they start inhaling, it's how much air  
11:39:32 21 they can get into -- into their lungs when they're inhaling  
11:39:37 22 from the particular device.

11:39:39 23 Q. With respect to the RS01-L device, what inhaled  
11:39:43 24 volume did Dr. Waxman and his colleagues find out?

11:39:47 25 A. So, they found that the mean volume was 1.4. And

Gonda - Direct

11:39:52 1 again, the -- some patients were a little bit higher and  
11:39:55 2 some patients were a little bit lower.

11:39:57 3 Q. Did Dr. Smyth conduct testing on inhaled -- let me  
11:40:02 4 rephrase.

11:40:03 5 Did Dr. Smyth conduct testing of this powdered  
11:40:08 6 formulation with a dry-powder inhaler?

11:40:09 7 A. Yes, he did.

11:40:10 8 Q. Did you create a demonstrative describing that?

11:40:12 9 A. Yes.

11:40:14 10 Q. Can we bring up DDX 5.4, please. And, Dr. Gonda,  
11:40:23 11 what type of DPI or dry-powder inhaler did Dr. Smyth use?

11:40:28 12 A. Well, it was the same DPI as one of the DPI, the  
11:40:33 13 low-resistance DPI in the publications that we have just  
11:40:37 14 reviewed.

11:40:38 15 Q. So he used an RS01-L which was the same as  
11:40:43 16 Dr. Waxman's device in his paper?

11:40:44 17 A. Yes, he did.

11:40:45 18 Q. And with respect to the inspiratory effort, what  
11:40:48 19 inspiratory effort did Dr. Smyth use?

11:40:50 20 A. He used four kilopascal.

11:40:53 21 Q. And how does that compare to the inspiratory effort  
11:40:55 22 that Dr. Waxman found for pulmonary arterial hypertension  
11:40:59 23 patients?

11:40:59 24 A. Well, it's obviously much higher.

11:41:02 25 Q. And with respect to inhaled volume, how much -- what

Gonda - Direct

11:41:07 1 was the inhaled volume that Dr. Smyth used?

11:41:09 2 A. It was about three times as high, almost three times  
11:41:13 3 as high as the volume, as the mean volume.

11:41:16 4 Q. And how did the differences in inspiratory effort and  
11:41:20 5 inhaled volume that Dr. Smyth used compare to Dr. Waxman in  
11:41:26 6 PAH patients impact his testing?

11:41:28 7 A. Well, I mean, firstly, it is questionable whether he  
11:41:34 8 had used the bodies from the paper, whether they would have  
11:41:39 9 got any dose out of the device. So, and if they got any  
11:41:43 10 dose out of the device, I would expect that the dose would  
11:41:46 11 have been lower and the particle size would have been  
11:41:50 12 higher. It wouldn't have been dispersed as well as with the  
11:41:53 13 bodies that he was using in the report.

11:41:55 14 Q. Now, did Dr. Smyth actually test his dry-powder and  
11:41:59 15 dry-powder inhaler in humans?

11:42:01 16 A. No, he did not.

11:42:03 17 Q. Did he test it in PAH patients?

11:42:05 18 A. No.

11:42:06 19 Q. Did he test it using a machine?

11:42:08 20 A. Yes, he used it on the bench. He used a pump to --  
11:42:14 21 pump to create the flow through the device.

11:42:16 22 Q. Based on the experiments Dr. Smyth conducted on the  
11:42:21 23 API, the carrier, making the dry-powder formulation and  
11:42:24 24 testing it in the RS01-L dry-powder inhaler, in your  
11:42:31 25 opinion, does his experiments establish that a POSA, as of

Gonda - Direct

11:42:36 1 May 2006, would have been enabled, based on the patent, to  
11:42:42 2 make a dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil for treating  
11:42:46 3 PH?

11:42:46 4 A. No.

11:42:47 5 Q. Now, do you understand Dr. Smyth is saying that he  
11:42:52 6 was able to do this so quickly, it's only in three weeks?

11:42:55 7 A. Yes, I know that he says that he did it in three  
11:42:59 8 weeks.

11:42:59 9 Q. If a colleague came to you and said, I developed a  
11:43:02 10 dry-powder formulation of Treprostinil that could be  
11:43:04 11 administered to a patient for pulmonary hypertension in  
11:43:07 12 three weeks, what would you say?

11:43:08 13 A. I would have said it's impossible.

11:43:12 14 Q. Why?

11:43:12 15 A. Because the elements that I mentioned before,  
11:43:16 16 choosing the suitable solid form, in the first place, or  
11:43:20 17 making it -- making sure that it satisfies the criteria that  
11:43:25 18 would be defined by POSAs in prior art, right, he wouldn't  
11:43:29 19 have been able to do that in three weeks.

11:43:31 20 And then on top of it, some of the experiments,  
11:43:33 21 which is the compatibility studies, when you're looking at  
11:43:38 22 stability and in general, I'm saying all of this would be  
11:43:40 23 done by a POSA even before going into animals; right? You  
11:43:43 24 would just -- you just -- it just takes much longer to do  
11:43:46 25 all of these steps. The stability studies take a lot longer



Gonda - Direct

11:43:50 1 than three weeks.

11:43:50 2 Q. So, if Dr. Smyth says, Oh, I didn't see any  
11:43:52 3 compatibility problems within the three weeks, what would  
11:43:55 4 that say to you?

11:43:56 5 A. I would say show me the data. He -- he certainly did  
11:44:00 6 not present any of the data. I would just say it's  
11:44:02 7 impossible to get that kind of data over such a short period  
11:44:05 8 of time.

11:44:06 9 Q. Now, do your opinions with respect to the enablement  
11:44:09 10 of dry-powder formulations of Treprostinil to make -- to  
11:44:14 11 treat pulmonary hypertension, would they also apply to  
11:44:18 12 Claims 4, 6, 7, and 8 of the '793 patent?

11:44:22 13 A. Yes.

11:44:23 14 MR. SUKDUANG: Thank you, Your Honor.

11:44:24 15 Dr. Gonda. No further questions.

11:44:25 16 THE COURT: All right. So we'll take a  
11:44:27 17 ten-minute break and then we'll come back.

11:44:29 18 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

11:45:28 19 (Recess was taken.)

11:56:11 20 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

11:56:17 21 THE COURT: Let's be seated.

11:56:23 22 Mr. Carsten.

11:56:24 23 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, may I proceed?

11:56:27 24 THE COURT: Yeah.

11:56:28 25 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you.

## CROSS-EXAMINATION

11:56:28 1

11:56:29 2

BY MR. CARSTEN:

11:56:29 3

Q. Good morning, Dr. Gonda.

11:56:31 4

A. Hello.

11:56:31 5

Q. My name is Doug Carsten. I don't think we ever

11:56:34 6

formally met before. I'm going to be asking you some

11:56:36 7

questions today, if that's okay.

11:56:37 8

A. Sure.

11:56:37 9

Q. Great. Now, the claims, you may have covered this

11:56:41 10

with Mr. Sukduang, but I want to make sure. The claims of

11:56:44 11

the '793 patent don't require FDA approval, do they?

11:56:47 12

A. No.

11:56:47 13

Q. Okay. And they don't require optimized formulations,

11:56:51 14

do they?

11:56:51 15

A. No.

11:56:52 16

Q. And the claims don't require a particular polymorphic

11:56:58 17

form?

11:56:58 18

A. No, they cover any -- any polymorphic form, yes.

11:57:05 19

Q. They don't require any particular polymorphic form;

11:57:07 20

right?

11:57:07 21

A. It should be a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

11:57:15 22

Q. I believe you testified that in your view, undue

11:57:20 23

experimentation meant any number of years of work. Isn't

11:57:25 24

that what you said earlier today?

11:57:26 25

A. Well, I wouldn't say any number of years. I said

11:57:31 1 substantial period of time.

11:57:32 2 Q. A substantial period of time. So a lot of work?

11:57:34 3 A. A lot of work. Yes.

11:57:37 4 Q. Now, in -- as of 2006 -- well, you put up a chart  
11:57:42 5 that had three items. It had active ingredient, it had  
11:57:47 6 carrier, and then it had inhaler device, right?

11:57:52 7 A. Yes, I did.

11:57:52 8 Q. As of 2006, there were numerous dry-powder inhalers  
11:57:56 9 options available to a person of skill in the art; correct?

11:57:57 10 A. Yes.

11:57:58 11 Q. There is the Dura/Spiros; correct?

11:58:02 12 A. Well, the Dura/Spiros was never approved. So -- and  
11:58:05 13 it was approved -- it was disapproved, not allowed to be  
11:58:09 14 used, by FDA, so a POSA would have been very reluctant to  
11:58:13 15 use a device that FDA refused to approve.

11:58:16 16 Q. But you just told me the claims don't require FDA  
11:58:19 17 approval; right?

11:58:20 18 A. No, but -- but a POSA would not have chosen a device  
11:58:23 19 where FDA would have stated very clearly why they didn't  
11:58:27 20 want it to approve it.

11:58:28 21 Q. Okay. But it was a publicly known dry-powder device.  
11:58:31 22 You agree with me on that at least; right?

11:58:33 23 A. It was a publicly available device, yes.

11:58:35 24 Q. The Exubera device was publicly known?

11:58:38 25 A. Sorry?

11:58:38 1 Q. Exubera?

11:58:39 2 A. Yes, Exubera was known. Yes.

11:58:41 3 Q. Now the Exubera device, that's a dry-powder inhaler  
11:58:44 4 device; right?

11:58:45 5 A. It is.

11:58:46 6 Q. And that's an active dry-powder inhaler device, isn't  
11:58:49 7 it?

11:58:49 8 A. That is correct.

11:58:51 9 Q. So it's not the passive device that you were  
11:58:54 10 depicting with the Plastiap device that you showed on your  
11:58:57 11 demonstratives right?

11:58:58 12 A. That is correct.

11:58:59 13 Q. Okay. So this one would actually assist a patient in  
11:59:04 14 taking dry-powders; correct?

11:59:06 15 A. It would -- that's correct. It would assist the  
11:59:09 16 patient. Will patients.

11:59:11 17 Q. And then you showed an image of a Plastiap device.  
11:59:16 18 Am I saying that correctly?

11:59:16 19 A. That's good enough. I can't -- I can't say it any  
11:59:20 20 better.

11:59:20 21 Q. Well, if it's good enough for you, it's good enough  
11:59:23 22 for me, Doctor. It's P-L-A-S-T-I-A-P-E; right.

11:59:27 23 A. That is correct.

11:59:28 24 Q. Italian company?

11:59:29 25 A. Sorry?

11:59:30 1 Q. Italian company?

11:59:31 2 A. Yes, correct.

11:59:32 3 Q. And Plastiape inhalation devices, they've been  
11:59:38 4 available since the 1970s; correct?

11:59:40 5 A. That is correct.

11:59:40 6 Q. Now, you understand that as of 2006, Remodulin was an  
11:59:46 7 approved drug product; correct?

11:59:48 8 A. Yes.

11:59:49 9 Q. And the active ingredient of Remodulin was  
11:59:52 10 Treprostinil; correct?

11:59:53 11 A. That is correct.

11:59:56 12 Q. Now, you believe that a person of skill in the art  
12:00:02 13 would have had some challenges in terms of identifying  
12:00:07 14 whether Treprostinil or a salt of Treprostinil would have  
12:00:10 15 been appropriate for taking into dry-powder inhalation  
12:00:16 16 development; correct?

12:00:17 17 A. Yes.

12:00:19 18 Q. Okay. Now -- and you pointed to an internal  
12:00:24 19 confidential document from United Therapeutics pertaining to  
12:00:28 20 characteristics of various salt forms; correct?

12:00:31 21 A. Yes, I did.

12:00:33 22 Q. Now, that wouldn't have been available to a person of  
12:00:37 23 skill in the art; right?

12:00:39 24 A. Not unless if they worked at United Therapeutics.

12:00:41 25 Q. And the hypothetical person of skill in the art,

12:00:45 1 there isn't a criteria that says you worked internally at  
12:00:48 2 United Therapeutics; is there?

12:00:49 3 A. No, no, of course.

12:00:50 4 Q. Okay. Fair enough. So, doing that kind of  
12:00:55 5 screening, though, of salt formation and properties, that  
12:00:58 6 was routine as of 2006, wasn't it?

12:01:00 7 A. Yes.

12:01:02 8 Q. And you could have hired a lab to go ahead and do  
12:01:05 9 that for you; right?

12:01:05 10 A. Yes.

12:01:06 11 Q. And it wouldn't be an expensive, long challenge, none  
12:01:09 12 of those things, would it?

12:01:11 13 A. I didn't say that. It could have been challenging.  
12:01:15 14 I mean, it would have depended on how quickly you would have  
12:01:18 15 found the right salt and studied all the attributes of that  
12:01:22 16 salt or the material that would be defined by POSAs. You  
12:01:26 17 know, what would be the properties that would be required  
12:01:28 18 for a suitable API form for a dry-powder inhaler.

12:01:32 19 Q. Right. And there were publications available as of  
12:01:34 20 2006 that set forth the kind of desired wish list for an API  
12:01:40 21 or an active pharmaceutical ingredient to be developed for a  
12:01:45 22 dry-powder inhaler; correct?

12:01:46 23 A. Yes, correct.

12:01:47 24 Q. Okay. Now, you pointed out hygroscopicity -- maybe I  
12:01:52 25 said that right, maybe I didn't -- as a concern, and you

12:01:56 1 criticized some of Dr. Smyth's work in the case on that  
12:02:00 2 basis; correct?

12:02:01 3 A. Yes, I did.

12:02:02 4 Q. Okay. Now, you understand, however, that a person of  
12:02:05 5 skill in the art could use temperature and humidity controls  
12:02:09 6 and controlled environments to try to address  
12:02:12 7 hygroscopicity; correct?

12:02:13 8 A. That is correct.

12:02:14 9 Q. And that was true as of 2006?

12:02:16 10 A. Yes.

12:02:17 11 Q. And those techniques were at -- or were readily  
12:02:20 12 available; correct?

12:02:20 13 A. Yes, they would have been in industrial laboratories,  
12:02:26 14 yes.

12:02:26 15 Q. And you understand that Dr. Smyth was not using an  
12:02:29 16 industrial laboratory for his prospecting experiments.  
12:02:32 17 Instead, he was using his own laboratory; right?

12:02:35 18 A. Well, he was supposed to be emulating what a POSA  
12:02:39 19 would do.

12:02:40 20 Q. Right. But he wasn't working in a pharmaceutical  
12:02:44 21 company with that kind of facility that you're aware of;  
12:02:48 22 right?

12:02:48 23 A. I -- I really don't know how, you know, what kind of  
12:02:52 24 laboratory -- I really don't know what is the quality of the  
12:02:55 25 laboratory with respect to production. So -- I just don't

12:03:00 1 know.

12:03:00 2 Q. Fair enough. But you're comfortable criticizing the  
12:03:03 3 Treprostinil sodium experiments of Dr. Smyth having not  
12:03:06 4 known anything about the laboratory -- laboratories in which  
12:03:09 5 he was conducting his experiments; right?

12:03:11 6 A. I'm saying that he provides no evidence that  
12:03:15 7 Treprostinil sodium could have been manufactured under  
12:03:18 8 whatever conditions he was using in his laboratory.

12:03:21 9 Q. Okay. Well, Dr. Smyth will get a chance to say  
12:03:25 10 exactly what he did and how he did it.

12:03:27 11 Let's turn to the -- the middle box. That was  
12:03:29 12 the carrier box. Do you remember that?

12:03:31 13 A. Yes, I do.

12:03:31 14 Q. Now, at the time, roughly 2006, lactose was an  
12:03:38 15 approved carrier for dry-powder formulations; correct?

12:03:41 16 A. That's correct.

12:03:43 17 Q. In fact, it was the only approved carrier at that  
12:03:45 18 time in the United States for dry-powder inhalation  
12:03:48 19 formulations; correct?

12:03:49 20 A. As far as I know, you are correct. It was the only  
12:03:52 21 excipient.

12:03:52 22 Q. Okay. But glucose was also approved as a dry carrier  
12:03:57 23 -- as a dry-powder carrier in Europe at that time. Isn't  
12:04:00 24 that right?

12:04:00 25 A. I really, really don't know, but I -- I believe you



12:04:03 1 when you say that. I -- I'm in the aware of that. I read  
12:04:07 2 that it was, but I have not checked it.

12:04:10 3 Q. You don't know one way or another whether there was a  
12:04:12 4 second carrier that was approved anywhere in the world as of  
12:04:15 5 the priority date?

12:04:16 6 A. I read about the fact. I actually haven't checked  
12:04:19 7 the approval, no.

12:04:20 8 Q. You remember reading that glucose was an approved  
12:04:24 9 carrier in Europe at that time, don't you?

12:04:26 10 A. Yes.

12:04:26 11 Q. Okay.

12:04:26 12 A. Yes.

12:04:26 13 Q. And you have no reason sitting here today to doubt  
12:04:29 14 that, do you?

12:04:29 15 A. No.

12:04:30 16 Q. You're here as an expert; right?

12:04:31 17 A. Yes.

12:04:32 18 Q. Okay. All right. And you also understand that  
12:04:35 19 compounds like mannitol, as of that time, had been shown to  
12:04:38 20 be feasible alternatives to lactose, and POSAs expected that  
12:04:43 21 they would, ultimately, be approved; correct?

12:04:45 22 A. Well, I think we need to be very careful about it  
12:04:50 23 particularly with respect to automation. Exubera was made  
12:04:56 24 with mannitol formulation. And it had a label that it was  
12:04:59 25 not recommended for patients with lung disease.

12:05:03 1 Q. I'm sorry. It was not --

12:05:05 2 A. So Exubera was a product, the Exubera device was --  
12:05:10 3 an Exubera device with a specific formulation which  
12:05:13 4 contained mannitol; right? And it had a label for approval  
12:05:18 5 that it should not be used in patients with lung disease.

12:05:24 6 So when it says mannitol, I mean, you have to be  
12:05:26 7 very careful. Again, bearing in mind what kind of  
12:05:30 8 population of patient you are going to be using the  
12:05:32 9 materials with.

12:05:33 10 Q. Okay. But you do understand that man -- the  
12:05:36 11 formulations including mannitol were ultimately approved  
12:05:39 12 drug products; right?

12:05:40 13 A. For other drugs, yes.

12:05:42 14 Q. Okay. And by for other drugs you mean not  
12:05:45 15 Treprostinil?

12:05:46 16 A. That's correct.

12:05:51 17 Q. You talked about some concerns about the Maillard  
12:05:57 18 reaction.

12:05:57 19 A. Yes, I did.

12:05:58 20 Q. And you say that a person of skill in the art at the  
12:06:01 21 time wouldn't pursue the use of a lactose carrier with  
12:06:05 22 amine-containing compounds, amine, A-M-I-N-E?

12:06:09 23 A. Yes.

12:06:09 24 Q. Out of concern about some safety issues; is that  
12:06:14 25 right?

12:06:14 1 A. Well, it wouldn't be my first choice or a POSA's  
12:06:18 2 choice to use the excipient unless you would say, well, I  
12:06:21 3 really don't have that many choices, so I have to pick this  
12:06:25 4 one. Yes, and then I would study all the aspects that I  
12:06:28 5 mentioned, the compatibility during manufacturing up to  
12:06:34 6 storage and up to real use before I would decide whether it  
12:06:36 7 is a suitable material.

12:06:42 8 Q. Okay. So let's see if I can get an answer to my  
12:06:45 9 question, sir, if I could.

12:06:46 10 A. Yes.

12:06:46 11 Q. I think we may have lost that in the bidding here.  
12:06:51 12 You say that a person of skill in the art would not pursue  
12:06:54 13 use of a lactose carrier with an amine-containing material  
12:06:58 14 out of concern out of safety concerns; is that right?

12:07:00 15 A. No, all I said was that a POSA would have had two  
12:07:04 16 choices. A POSA would have said, well, I will use lactose,  
12:07:08 17 but now I will study whether the lactose is compatible with  
12:07:12 18 my materials through all of these steps that I mentioned  
12:07:16 19 before a POSA would come to the conclusion that lactose is a  
12:07:19 20 suitable carrier.

12:07:20 21 Q. Okay. And that's true even though lactose was the  
12:07:24 22 only approved carrier as of 2006 in the United States;  
12:07:28 23 correct?

12:07:29 24 A. Well, a POSA would have had the choice, as we have  
12:07:35 25 found out that Mannkind and Liquidia, to say, I am not going

## Gonda - Cross

12:07:39 1 to use lactose because I worry about this, and I'm going to  
12:07:42 2 develop my own formulation which should be a new whole new  
12:07:49 3 formulation, a revolutionary step not based on prior art.

12:07:50 4 Q. Right. Somebody could do that; right?

12:07:52 5 A. Yeah.

12:07:52 6 Q. Okay. Now, I believe that counsel -- this is -- let  
12:07:57 7 me see.

12:07:57 8 This is the '793 patent. This is the patent  
12:07:59 9 that you studied in this case; right, Dr. Gonda?

12:08:02 10 A. Yes, of course.

12:08:02 11 Q. And this is the compound Treprostinil; right?

12:08:06 12 A. It's Treprostinil sodium.

12:08:08 13 Q. Right.

12:08:09 14 A. It's a salt.

12:08:10 15 Q. The sodium is that little NA plus there; right?

12:08:12 16 A. Yes, it is.

12:08:13 17 Q. Okay. And if this were going to be just Treprostinil  
12:08:16 18 free acid, you wouldn't have that little minus sign, you  
12:08:19 19 would have an H there instead and none of this NA business;  
12:08:22 20 right?

12:08:22 21 A. I agree.

12:08:23 22 Q. Okay. Great.

12:08:24 23 Now, you would agree with me, Dr. Gonda,  
12:08:26 24 wouldn't you, that the Treprostinil molecule contains no  
12:08:30 25 amines; right?

12:08:31 1 A. That's correct.

12:08:34 2 Q. So the concerns about a Maillard formulation have  
12:08:39 3 nothing to do with the Treprostinil molecule itself but  
12:08:43 4 rather the particular salt form here was a diethanolamine,  
12:08:48 5 which that's the concern for using lactose; right? The  
12:08:52 6 amine and the counter ion?

12:08:54 7 A. Yes, in this particular case that is the concern,  
12:08:56 8 yes.

12:08:57 9 Q. And there are other salt forms available that which  
12:09:00 10 don't have that amino group in the counter ion; correct?

12:09:03 11 A. I'm not sure that there were other salts available.

12:09:10 12 Q. Okay. If that's your testimony.

12:09:13 13 The diethanolamine counter ion, we talked about  
12:09:17 14 primary amines and secondary amines. Do you remember that  
12:09:20 15 testimony?

12:09:20 16 A. Yes, I do.

12:09:22 17 Q. All right. And the counterion here is a secondary  
12:09:26 18 amine, if you're classifying it; right?

12:09:29 19 A. That is correct.

12:09:30 20 Q. And it's not even really a secondary amine. It's a  
12:09:33 21 secondary ammonium ion if we're being specific; right?

12:09:37 22 A. Well, you know, you're really testing my chemistry.  
12:09:41 23 I say I really can't -- yeah. But it's a diethanolamine.

12:09:48 24 Q. You can't say one way or the other whether it's a  
12:09:50 25 diethanolamine, a secondary amine, or a diethanol ammonium

12:09:56 1 ion? You don't know?

12:09:56 2 A. I don't know the distinction. Yeah, I don't.

12:09:59 3 Q. Fair enough. Okay.

12:10:00 4 You yourself were involved, however, as of the  
12:10:05 5 priority date, in formulating a dry-powder using DNase;  
12:10:12 6 right?

12:10:12 7 A. That is right.

12:10:13 8 Q. And DNase is a protein; right?

12:10:15 9 A. Yes.

12:10:16 10 Q. And proteins contain primary amines?

12:10:18 11 A. Yes.

12:10:19 12 Q. And that contained lactose, didn't it?

12:10:21 13 A. Yes.

12:10:21 14 Q. It was approved drug product?

12:10:24 15 A. Not the dry-powder, no.

12:10:32 16 Q. In fact, you worked on that product with Dr. Clark;  
12:10:35 17 right?

12:10:35 18 A. Yes, I did.

12:10:37 19 Q. There are a lot of reunions of experts in this case?

12:10:41 20 A. Yes, happy days.

12:10:42 21 Q. Now, Dr. Gonda, you could have done a test yourself,  
12:10:54 22 couldn't you?

12:10:55 23 A. Can you be specific. What kind of test?

12:10:59 24 Q. Sure. You could have sat down with a batch of

12:11:03 25 Treprostinil of one sort or another and some lactose and

12:11:06 1 actually given it a shot and seen if applying the level of  
12:11:09 2 ordinary skill in the art in 2006 that a person of skill  
12:11:13 3 would have had success without undue experimentation; right?

12:11:17 4 A. Well, again, it all depends on what you define as  
12:11:21 5 undue experimentation. These experiments take months  
12:11:24 6 because you would want to know whether, during the storage  
12:11:29 7 of the product and during the use, you would -- you would  
12:11:34 8 want to be pretty sure that you're not going to get the  
12:11:38 9 reaction because you would want to do it before you go into  
12:11:42 10 animal, long before you go into human.

12:11:44 11 Q. Understood.

12:11:44 12 A. So I -- it would take several months, at least.

12:11:47 13 Q. Sure. I apologize. I didn't mean to step on your  
12:11:50 14 words, sir, I want to make sure you complete your answer.

12:11:52 15 Stability testing was routine as of 2006; right?

12:11:56 16 A. Yes.

12:11:58 17 Q. And the reason it would take months is the stability  
12:12:03 18 testing. You have to let it sit in order to test whether  
12:12:06 19 it's stable after a certain period of time; right?

12:12:10 20 A. That is correct.

12:12:10 21 Q. Okay. Let me make sure I got an answer to my  
12:12:14 22 question, though. There was nothing preventing you from  
12:12:17 23 going ahead and actually trying this yourself as part of  
12:12:21 24 your work in this case; correct?

12:12:23 25 A. That is correct. The POSA would have studied this.

12:12:28 1 Q. Yeah, they would have. You chose not to. Instead,  
12:12:31 2 you were looking at Dr. Smyth's information. You didn't try  
12:12:34 3 that test yourself; right?

12:12:38 4 A. Well, we tried it for DNase.

12:12:40 5 Q. Sure, for DNase. You didn't try it with any  
12:12:43 6 Treprostinil in connection with your work in this case; is  
12:12:45 7 that right?

12:12:45 8 A. No, I did not.

12:12:46 9 Q. Okay. Let's turn to written description, if we  
12:12:50 10 could.

12:12:53 11 You agree with me, at least, that -- well, maybe  
12:12:59 12 I shouldn't do it, but there's a Latin expression that says  
12:13:02 13 in forma verbis. It means the words themselves. You agree  
12:13:05 14 with me that in forma verbis, the words themselves, that  
12:13:10 15 dry-powder appears in this patent; right? Dry-powder  
12:13:14 16 inhaler?

12:13:15 17 A. Yes, it does.

12:13:16 18 Q. They're there in Column 7?

12:13:18 19 A. Yes, in the highlighted text, yes.

12:13:23 20 Q. Right. And dry-powder with a particular particle  
12:13:28 21 size of less than 5 micrometers in diameter is also there in  
12:13:33 22 words themselves; right?

12:13:34 23 A. Yes, it is.

12:13:36 24 Q. And that's in the specification at Column 7?

12:13:39 25 A. That's correct.



12:13:40 1 Q. Okay. Now, you think that it doesn't -- that this is  
12:13:46 2 insufficient written description because there's got to be  
12:13:50 3 more; right?

12:13:53 4 A. Yes. I mean that's one aspect of it, yes.

12:13:56 5 Q. That's the only aspect of it. It's written  
12:13:58 6 description. You have to look within the four corners of  
12:14:00 7 the document through the filter of a person of skill in the  
12:14:03 8 art and determine whether the inventor had possession of the  
12:14:07 9 -- of the invention or not; right?

12:14:09 10 A. Yes.

12:14:11 11 Q. That's the standard you applied?

12:14:12 12 A. Yes. I mean, yes. I did look whether the patent  
12:14:19 13 had -- what information it had about dry-powder inhalers and  
12:14:24 14 dry-powder processes.

12:14:25 15 Q. And in terms of your written description analysis --  
12:14:28 16 we're talking about written description now -- is it your  
12:14:32 17 understanding that to satisfy written description, a person  
12:14:37 18 of skill in the art must be able to piece together the  
12:14:40 19 information that is provided in the patent and then be able  
12:14:44 20 to develop the product or method in the patent?

12:14:46 21 A. Yes.

12:14:48 22 Q. Okay. And that's the standard you applied as well as  
12:14:50 23 the possession test; right?

12:14:52 24 A. No, I did not use the form.

12:14:55 25 Q. I'm sorry.

12:14:56 1 A. I did not use the same standard for possession.

12:15:01 2 Q. I'm sorry, sir. I missed it.

12:15:02 3 A. So I did not see any evidence that the inventors  
12:15:05 4 would have the possession, and I couldn't see how, based on  
12:15:09 5 this patent and the prior art, a POSA would have been able  
12:15:14 6 to make a dry-powder inhaler with dry-powder formulation of  
12:15:18 7 Treprostinil without undue experimentation.

12:15:21 8 Q. I understand. I'm asking a very specific question.

12:15:23 9 A. Yes.

12:15:24 10 Q. Your understanding and the standard for written  
12:15:28 11 description that you applied here included whether the  
12:15:33 12 written description, using that description, a person of  
12:15:36 13 skill in the art would be able to piece together the  
12:15:39 14 information that is provided in the patent and then be able  
12:15:43 15 to develop the product or method in the patent.

12:15:46 16 A. Yes, I did it. As I said, my basis for enabling was  
12:15:53 17 that -- that a POSA would not have been able to do this  
12:15:56 18 without undue experimentation.

12:15:58 19 Q. I understand you applied that for enablement.

12:16:01 20 A. Yes.

12:16:01 21 Q. Again, third time, and I'll be done really soon, I  
12:16:05 22 promise. You also considered that to be the standard for  
12:16:08 23 written description, didn't you?

12:16:09 24 A. Well, I mean, honestly, I'm not a lawyer, and I  
12:16:16 25 really can't give you a straight answer to this. No.

## Gonda - Cross

12:16:19 1 Q. I understand and appreciate that. Let me just show a  
12:16:27 2 segment of your deposition, if I could, sir. You remember  
12:16:31 3 you were deposed in this case?

12:16:32 4 A. Several times.

12:16:34 5 Q. Well, in this case, it was just once. There were  
12:16:36 6 some IPRs in which --

12:16:37 7 A. Yes.

12:16:38 8 Q. -- you were deposed as well, and my colleague Art  
12:16:42 9 Dykhuis took your deposition; right?

12:16:43 10 A. Yes, he did.

12:16:46 11 Q. You have this in your binder as well.

12:16:49 12 A. Yes.

12:16:49 13 Q. But I'm turning to Page 50, and I'll put it up on the  
12:16:53 14 board as well.

12:16:54 15 MR. SUKDUANG: Can you tell me which transcript.

12:16:56 16 MR. CARSTEN: It's the District Court deposition  
12:16:58 17 at page 50.

12:17:00 18 THE WITNESS: So that would be the January 7th?

12:17:07 19 BY MR. CARSTEN:

12:17:07 20 Q. Let me check.

12:17:08 21 A. 2022? Yes.

12:17:11 22 Q. January 7th.

12:17:11 23 A. Yes, correct.

12:17:12 24 Q. Okay.

12:17:14 25 A. And it's page?

12:17:16 1 Q. It's going to be at Page 50 onto Page 51. And I've  
12:17:21 2 got it on the screen if you need it.

12:17:23 3 A. Okay. That may be easier.

12:17:25 4 Q. It may be easier, and if you need me to blow  
12:17:27 5 something up, you just let me know. Okay?

12:17:29 6 A. Yes, thank you.

12:17:30 7 Q. So Mr. Dykhuis asked you "Is undue experimentation"  
12:17:36 8 -- excuse me. "Is the lack of undue experimentation also a  
12:17:40 9 requirement for a written description as you understand it?"

12:17:42 10 And you answered -- there was an objection. You  
12:17:44 11 answered, "Well, they are not exactly the same. I mean, as  
12:17:47 12 I said, I'm not a lawyer." And then you went on to say,  
12:17:51 13 "You know, I think that they are similar; right? But  
12:17:54 14 clearly there is a -- there is a distinction between the  
12:17:56 15 two. So the enablement is defined by undue  
12:18:00 16 experimentation." Right?

12:18:00 17 At the top, it continues and you said, "My  
12:18:03 18 understanding of written description is that it needs to be  
12:18:07 19 adequate for a person of ordinary skill in the art to be  
12:18:10 20 able to piece together the information that is provided in  
12:18:12 21 the patent and then be able to develop the product or the  
12:18:15 22 method in the claims of the patent. So, the enablement is  
12:18:19 23 specifically defined in terms of undue experimentation.  
12:18:23 24 But, I mean, from my perspective, they are related. They're  
12:18:26 25 not identical requirements, but they are related."

12:18:28 1 Is that correct?

12:18:29 2 A. Yes, I did say that.

12:18:30 3 Q. That was your answer then; correct?

12:18:32 4 A. Except for the under. I said the text says under  
12:18:43 5 experimentation. It should be undue experimentation.

12:18:44 6 Q. Right. That's an error in the transcript; right?

12:18:47 7 A. Yes.

12:18:47 8 Q. Now, you relied in connection with your undue -- with  
12:18:50 9 your written description analysis in the case on some  
12:18:55 10 deposition testimony from Dr. Seeger, Dr. Rubin, et cetera;  
12:19:01 11 correct?

12:19:01 12 A. Yes, I relied on that. I relied upon my own  
12:19:06 13 knowledge, yes. They were -- and the information that was  
12:19:10 14 also presented to me during this -- during the preparation.

12:19:15 15 Q. Understood. Now, you were here in court when  
12:19:17 16 Dr. Rubin's video was played?

12:19:19 17 A. Yes, I was.

12:19:20 18 Q. Okay. And you heard Dr. Rubin talk about a lunch he  
12:19:24 19 had with UTC's Martine Rothblatt, did you?

12:19:27 20 A. Yes, I did.

12:19:28 21 Q. And you heard him say that I told Dr. Rothblatt at  
12:19:32 22 that point that we ought to pursue a dry-powder inhaler for  
12:19:35 23 Treprostinil; right?

12:19:36 24 A. Yes, I heard that.

12:19:38 25 Q. Was there any doubt in your mind that -- when you

12:19:40 1 heard that Dr. Rubin had clear possession in his head of a  
12:19:46 2 dry-powder formulation including Treprostinil?

12:19:47 3 A. Well, I think that a statement "it would be nice to  
12:19:53 4 have a dry-powder inhaler" does not indicate to me that he  
12:19:56 5 was in possession of the invention.

12:19:59 6 Q. Fair enough. I understand that, sir. Thank you so  
12:20:01 7 much.

12:20:01 8 MR. CARSTEN: I have no further questions, Your  
12:20:03 9 Honor.

12:20:03 10 MR. SUKDUANG: No redirect, Your Honor.

12:20:04 11 THE COURT: All right. Dr. Gonda, thank you.  
12:20:06 12 You may step down. Watch your step.

12:20:09 13 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

12:20:19 14 MR. SUKDUANG: Your Honor, Dr. Gonda was our  
12:20:22 15 last witness, so we close our case on --

12:20:32 16 THE COURT: All right.

12:20:37 17 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor this is my colleague  
12:20:39 18 Harry Gunn. He would like to make a an oral motion under  
12:20:42 19 Rule 52(c).

12:20:43 20 THE COURT: All right. Knock yourself out.

12:20:47 21 MR. GUNN: All right. So there's two categories  
12:20:49 22 of arguments here. The first one is arguments Defendant  
12:20:52 23 disclosed in the Pretrial Order that they didn't present any  
12:20:55 24 evidence whatsoever at trial for. And the second argument  
12:20:58 25 is for where they presented evidence but it's not sufficient

12:21:02 1 to meet their burden.

12:21:03 2           So we'll start with the '066 patent. Defendants  
12:21:07 3 have not presented any evidence of obviousness of the '066  
12:21:10 4 patent. And then with respect to 112, defendants have only  
12:21:14 5 presented two of their 13 arguments. The 11 arguments they  
12:21:18 6 have not presented at trial include the following: Written  
12:21:21 7 description. They haven't presented arguments with respect  
12:21:23 8 to the salt limitation, with respect to the storage  
12:21:26 9 limitation, with respect to the permission of a column  
12:21:29 10 chromatography limitation between alkylation and salt  
12:21:32 11 formation, and with respect to permission of an isolation  
12:21:35 12 between hydrolysis and salt formation.

12:21:37 13           With respect to enablement, they haven't  
12:21:40 14 presented argument with respect to the salt limitation, with  
12:21:42 15 respect to the storage limitation, with respect to the  
12:21:45 16 permission of column chromatography between alkylation and  
12:21:48 17 salt formation, and with respect to isolation between  
12:21:51 18 hydrolysis and salt formation.

12:21:53 19           And with respect to indefiniteness, the  
12:21:56 20 defendants have not presented any evidence with respect to  
12:21:59 21 the impurities limitation.

12:22:02 22           And next, on to the second category of  
12:22:05 23 arguments. Defendant has failed to meet their burden of  
12:22:08 24 clear and convincing evidence. Defendant has failed to show  
12:22:12 25 by clear and convincing evidence that the '066 patent is

invalid as a product-by-process claim because they have not shown publicly available information showing that the product produced according to the Moriarty JOC article is the same as the product produced according to the Chicago process to make Remodulin. Dr. Winkler relies only on confidential information submitted by UTC to the FDA, and a POSA would not have had access to this information prior to the priority date.

With respect to their 112 arguments, Defendant has failed to meet its burden to demonstrate clear and convincing evidence that the inventors were not in possession of the impurities limitation. Dr. Winkler's analysis reads out the word "steps" from the impurities limitation. He instead focuses on highly specific blackboard chemistry where the I am impurities can only come from the single molecule BTO. This is not aligned with the real-world reaction processes disclosed in the patent. And in doing so, he fails to consider that colored impurities are created after the alkylation and hydrolysis steps, and those colored impurities are removed in the salt formation step.

With respect to the definiteness of the storage limitation, Liquidia -- Defendant Liquidia has, again, failed to meet its burden of clear and convincing evidence that a POSA would not have been able to discern with



1 reasonable certainty the scope and meaning of the storage  
2 limitation. The disagreement between this Court and the  
3 PTAB on the meaning of "storage" does not provide sufficient  
4 evidence to meet that burden.

5 Turning next to the '793 patent, again, there's  
6 these two categories where they didn't present any arguments  
7 that were disclosed in the Pretrial Order. Those arguments  
8 that they didn't present any 102 arguments and no  
9 obviousness arguments with respect to the '793 patent.

10 With respect to the 112 arguments, Liquidia has  
11 failed to meet its burden of clear and convincing evidence  
12 that the inventors did not possess a method of treating all  
13 five groups of pulmonary hypertension. The patent describes  
14 treating patients with mixed pre- and post-capillary group  
15 two hypertension, and as Dr. Hill explained, a POSA would  
16 have understood that Treprostinil cannot be used to treat  
17 purely postcapillary group two hypertension as explained by  
18 Dr. Hill.

19 THE COURT: All right. Thank you, Mr. Gunn.  
20 I'll grant the part about the Section 112 indefiniteness  
21 argument relating to the storage limitation for the '066  
22 patent. Otherwise, I'll take it all under advisement. So,  
23 let's proceed.

24 MR. GUNN: Thank you, Your Honor.

25 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you, Your Honor. United

Bunce - Direct

12:24:54 1 Therapeutics calls as its next witness, Mr. Dean Bunce of  
12:24:59 2 United Therapeutics.

12:25:24 3 And Mr. Burrowbridge will be conducting the  
12:25:26 4 examination.

12:25:26 5 THE COURT: All right. Thank you.

12:25:38 6 DEPUTY CLERK: Please state and spell your full  
12:25:41 7 name for the record.

12:25:42 8 THE WITNESS: Dean Bunce, D-E-A-N B-U-N-C-E.

12:25:47 9 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
12:25:49 10 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
12:25:52 11 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
12:25:53 12 truth, you do so affirm?

12:25:55 13 THE WITNESS: I do affirm.

12:25:55 14 DEAN BUNCE, the witness herein, after having  
12:25:55 15 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
12:25:57 16 follows:

12:25:57 17 DEPUTY CLERK: Thank you. You can be seated,  
12:25:58 18 and there's the microphone on top of the computer, so make  
12:26:01 19 sure you speak into it.

12:26:03 20 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: May I approach?

12:26:05 21 THE COURT: Yes.

12:26:12 22 DIRECT EXAMINATION

12:26:18 23 BY MR. BURROWBRIDGE:

12:26:18 24 Q. Good morning, Mr. Bunce.

12:26:29 25 A. Good morning.

Bunce - Direct

12:26:30 1 Q. Can you please introduce yourself to the Court.

12:26:33 2 A. I'm Dean Bunce, executive vice president global  
12:26:36 3 regulatory affairs for United Therapeutics.

12:26:39 4 Q. When did you first start work at UTC?

12:26:41 5 A. In August 1999.

12:26:43 6 Q. Have you been the head of regulatory since you  
12:26:48 7 started with UTC?

12:26:49 8 A. I have, and I was also head of compliance for a time.

12:26:54 9 Q. What are your responsibilities as executive vice  
12:26:57 10 president global regulatory affairs?

12:26:58 11 A. I'm responsible for all interactions and submissions  
12:27:02 12 to regulatory agencies including the FDA.

12:27:06 13 Q. When was the original Remodulin NDA submitted to the  
12:27:10 14 FDA?

12:27:11 15 A. October 2000.

12:27:13 16 Q. And when was the original Remodulin NDA approved?

12:27:16 17 A. In May 2002.

12:27:19 18 Q. Where was the Treprostinil used in Remodulin  
12:27:22 19 manufactured at the time of the original NDA submission?

12:27:25 20 A. In Chicago.

12:27:28 21 Q. And when was the original TYVASO NDA application  
12:27:32 22 submitted to the FDA?

12:27:33 23 A. In June 2008.

12:27:36 24 Q. When was the original TYVASO NDA approved?

12:27:39 25 A. In July 2009.

Bunce - Direct

12:27:41 1 Q. Was the material made according to the TYVASO NDA  
12:27:46 2 ever available to the public before the time of the FDA  
12:27:49 3 approval?

12:27:50 4 A. No, we cannot sell any product until we have  
12:27:54 5 approval.

12:27:55 6 Q. Was UTC's process for manufacturing Remodulin under  
12:27:58 7 its original NDA submission publicly known at the time?

12:28:01 8 A. No, what we put in the submission is proprietary.

12:28:07 9 Q. Was the process information, analytical methods, and  
12:28:10 10 details of the COAs publicly available before the TYVASO  
12:28:17 11 approval in 2009?

12:28:18 12 A. It was not. Again, we can't provide -- the  
12:28:21 13 information we put into an application is proprietary  
12:28:25 14 information.

12:28:25 15 Q. If UTC were to change the process used to manufacture  
12:28:29 16 the Treprostinil Remodulin, would that be reported to the  
12:28:33 17 FDA?

12:28:33 18 A. Yes. Any change in process is required to be  
12:28:35 19 submitted to the FDA and approved before we can use that  
12:28:39 20 change.

12:28:40 21 Q. Did UTC ever seek approval for a change in its  
12:28:43 22 Treprostinil manufacturing process?

12:28:44 23 A. Yes, we did.

12:28:47 24 Q. When did UTC seek approval for a change in its  
12:28:50 25 manufacturing process?

Bunce - Direct

12:28:50 1 A. That was in 2008.

12:28:56 2 Q. And what prompted that change?

12:28:58 3 A. A couple of things. A change of the site from  
12:29:02 4 Chicago to Silver Spring and improvements in the process  
12:29:06 5 when we went to Silver Spring.

12:29:08 6 Q. And when was the move to the Silver Spring facility?

12:29:10 7 A. It opened in 2007.

12:29:16 8 Q. When did the FDA approve commercial batches  
12:29:18 9 manufactured by the new process in Silver Spring?

12:29:20 10 A. In May 2009.

12:29:25 11 Q. With respect to characterizing the quality of the  
12:29:28 12 drug substance, what is provided to the FDA?

12:29:30 13 A. We provide information on how it's manufactured,  
12:29:35 14 certificates of analysis from test batches, and stability  
12:29:38 15 data.

12:29:40 16 Q. How does the FDA regulate the purity of the drug  
12:29:42 17 substance being reported?

12:29:44 18 A. Saying through -- we are required to submit  
12:29:48 19 analytical updates to the FDA with results of testing and  
12:29:52 20 annual batches that go on stability.

12:29:56 21 Q. Does that include assay purity?

12:29:58 22 A. It does.

12:29:59 23 Q. Has UTC ever updated its purity assay specification?

12:30:03 24 A. Yes, we have.

12:30:05 25 Q. I'd like to turn to DTX 07.

Bunce - Direct

12:30:08 1 A. Okay.

12:30:18 2 Q. You have it in front of you as well.

12:30:20 3 A. Yes.

12:30:20 4 Q. What is this document?

12:30:22 5 A. This was our --

12:30:30 6 Q. Seven.

12:30:30 7 Go ahead, you can use the document in front of  
12:30:32 8 you.

12:30:32 9 A. This is our response to our pre-approval supplement  
12:30:36 10 for the change in Chicago and the manufacture that we  
12:30:39 11 submitted to the FDA in 2009.

12:30:47 12 Q. I'd like to direct you to FDA comment two. Do you  
12:30:50 13 see that?

12:30:50 14 A. Yes.

12:30:55 15 Q. What was the FDA asking you, UTC, to do in this  
12:30:59 16 comment?

12:30:59 17 A. To provide justification for specifications and for  
12:31:05 18 the change in -- in the Treprostinil drug substance  
12:31:09 19 specification.

12:31:09 20 Q. What was UTC's justification for typing the release  
12:31:16 21 specification?

12:31:16 22 A. When we did the change in process, we found that the  
12:31:20 23 purity of the drug substance we were making was -- was more  
12:31:24 24 pure than before or closer to 100 percent with assay  
12:31:29 25 variability of plus or minus two percent. We found that

Bunce - Direct

12:31:32 1 some of the batches from Chicago would have been out of spec  
12:31:36 2 if we did not get a change in the specification closer to  
12:31:40 3 100 percent.

12:31:42 4 Q. And does this document describe the shift in the  
12:31:46 5 release specification?

12:31:47 6 A. Yes, it does.

12:31:49 7 Q. And when was that shift?

12:31:49 8 A. In the changing from 97 to 101 percent to 98 to  
12:31:55 9 102 percent.

12:31:59 10 Q. Do you also see the paragraph above FDA comment two?

12:32:02 11 A. Yes.

12:32:04 12 Q. There's a statement "API produced by the new process  
12:32:07 13 in Silver Spring are of the same high quality and purity as  
12:32:11 14 the commercial lots of API produced at the existing process  
12:32:14 15 at the Chicago facility."

12:32:16 16 Do you see that?

12:32:16 17 A. Yes, I do.

12:32:17 18 Q. What does that statement mean in the context of this  
12:32:19 19 FDA correspondence?

12:32:22 20 A. For FDA, when we submit a regulatory change, FDA  
12:32:26 21 wants the change to be the same or better than what's  
12:32:32 22 currently available. They like -- we can't introduce new  
12:32:37 23 impurities or that the level of impurities are lower than  
12:32:40 24 what was previously there. So in this change, they -- going  
12:32:46 25 up to 99 percent -- or excuse me. Target of 100 percent

Bunce - Direct

12:32:51 1 purity was a change that the FDA would have liked, and they  
12:32:55 2 did. They approved it.

12:32:58 3 Q. And so, is it fair to say that this was/is showing  
12:33:01 4 that the new process was above the minimum -- minimal  
12:33:05 5 requirements -- excuse me -- the minimum requirements that  
12:33:08 6 the FDA had previously required?

12:33:09 7 A. Yes.

12:33:13 8 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: Plaintiff offers DTX 70 into  
12:33:15 9 evidence.

12:33:15 10 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:33:16 11 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

12:33:18 12 (DTX Exhibit No. 70 was admitted into evidence.)

12:33:19 13 BY MR. BURROWBRIDGE:

12:33:19 14 Q. Has UTC ever updated its approval specifications to  
12:33:22 15 the FDA?

12:33:22 16 A. Yes.

12:33:25 17 Q. Please turn to PTX 1552. What is this document?

12:33:32 18 A. This is an information request letter from the FDA  
12:33:38 19 during its review of the TYVASO NDA asking for various  
12:33:42 20 things.

12:33:49 21 Q. If you look at comment two in this document, what is  
12:33:53 22 the FDA requesting?

12:33:55 23 A. Based on the data submitted, they're asking us to  
12:34:00 24 tighten our total related substances specification, and  
12:34:04 25 provide justification.



Bunce - Direct

12:34:06 1 Q. Is it normal for the FDA to request tightening of  
12:34:09 2 specifications?

12:34:10 3 A. Yes, it is. The FDA reviews all the data for new  
12:34:16 4 process or a change in process. FDA wants the  
12:34:19 5 specifications as tight as possible. And the lower -- and  
12:34:24 6 the fewest impurities or lowest level of impurities in a  
12:34:27 7 product because those impurities can/could have an  
12:34:30 8 unintended effect for a patient.

12:34:37 9 Q. And is it normal for the FDA to request tightening of  
12:34:40 10 the specification even if the product is already within the  
12:34:43 11 specification?

12:34:43 12 A. Yes. And through -- either through another  
12:34:48 13 supplement or through annual reports, FDA reviews that data  
12:34:52 14 and -- if the process supports a tightening of the  
12:34:55 15 specifications. Yes, they often will request the change.

12:34:59 16 Q. And looking back at question two, is the FDA  
12:35:04 17 asking -- excuse me. Can you, again, explain what the FDA  
12:35:11 18 is asking here with regard to impurity limits.

12:35:14 19 A. So, we had a specification limit of not more than  
12:35:19 20 three percent for total related substances. FDA says that  
12:35:22 21 wasn't justified. So showing that our impurities were quite  
12:35:27 22 a bit lower this time, so they're asking us to tighten that  
12:35:30 23 criteria.

12:35:31 24 Q. And why does the FDA care about impurity limits?

12:35:34 25 A. In -- impurities can have unintended side effects for

Bunce - Direct

12:35:39 1 patients, and so FDA wants the lowest levels that's in there  
12:35:47 2 going -- you know, going forward for all patients.

12:35:50 3 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: I'd like to offer PTX 1552  
12:35:52 4 into evidence.

12:35:53 5 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:35:54 6 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

12:35:55 7 (PTX Exhibit No. 1552 was admitted into  
12:35:55 8 evidence.)

12:35:56 9 BY MR. BURROWBRIDGE:

12:35:56 10 Q. Please turn to PTX 1553. 1553.

12:36:08 11 Do you have it, Mr. Bunce?

12:36:09 12 A. Yes.

12:36:09 13 Q. And what is this document?

12:36:11 14 A. This is our response to FDA's request to tighten the  
12:36:15 15 specifications, among other topics.

12:36:20 16 Q. And how did UTC respond to the FDA comment two?

12:36:23 17 A. We -- we disagreed that we could, based on the  
12:36:29 18 process and the data, that we could tighten our  
12:36:31 19 specifications.

12:36:36 20 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: UTC offers PTX 1553 into  
12:36:38 21 evidence.

12:36:41 22 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:36:42 23 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

12:36:43 24 (PTX Exhibit No. 1553 was admitted into  
12:36:43 25 evidence.)

Bunce - Direct

12:36:44 1 BY MR. BURROWBRIDGE:

12:36:44 2 Q. How does FDA monitor the stability of the drug  
12:36:50 3 substance?

12:36:51 4 A. We're required to put at least one batch on stability  
12:36:56 5 a year and present those results of that batch and other  
12:37:00 6 batches that are ongoing to FDA annually.

12:37:03 7 Q. And why are stability studies important to the FDA?

12:37:06 8 A. Again, it shows that the product is stable -- stable  
12:37:09 9 over the approved expiration date. And that the impurities  
12:37:16 10 are not -- not increasing or going out of spec.

12:37:20 11 Q. Is the data submitted to the FDA representative of  
12:37:23 12 what you intend to sell?

12:37:25 13 A. Yes, it is.

12:37:26 14 Q. Let's pull up PTX 1564.

12:37:37 15 A. Okay.

12:37:37 16 Q. What is this document?

12:37:39 17 A. It is our 2015 submission of stability data FDA in  
12:37:44 18 one of our annual reports.

12:37:46 19 Q. It was 1564.

12:37:50 20 If we turn to Page 3, what does this page show?

12:37:55 21 A. It's -- Page 3 shows the stability data for  
12:38:05 22 Treprostinil drug substance manufactured in Silver Spring,  
12:38:07 23 Maryland, in 2009 and the 60-month stability time frame.

12:38:13 24 Q. Was this submitted to the FDA as representative of  
12:38:15 25 the product manufactured in Silver Spring?

Bunce - Direct

12:38:17 1 A. Yes, it was.

12:38:19 2 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: Plaintiff moves to admit PTX  
12:38:21 3 1564.

12:38:21 4 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:38:22 5 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

12:38:24 6 (PTX Exhibit No. 1564 was admitted into  
12:38:24 7 evidence.)

12:38:24 8 BY MR. BURROWBRIDGE:

12:38:24 9 Q. Based on your interactions with the FDA, how do you  
12:38:27 10 understand the FDA views impurities and drug substances in  
12:38:31 11 drug products?

12:38:32 12 A. The FDA would like those to be as low as possible  
12:38:36 13 again so there's less chance of unintended side effects from  
12:38:41 14 those impurities.

12:38:42 15 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: Pass the witness.

12:38:46 16 MR. SUKDUANG: No questions, Your Honor.

12:38:47 17 THE COURT: All right. Mr. Bunce, thank you.

12:38:51 18 You may step down.

12:39:03 19 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, United Therapeutics  
12:39:05 20 calls Dr. David Walsh to the stand.

12:39:07 21 THE COURT: Okay.

12:39:08 22 MR. CARSTEN: My colleague Art Dykhuis is going  
12:39:13 23 to be handling this examination.

12:39:15 24 THE COURT: All right.

12:39:39 25 DEPUTY CLERK: You can stand. Please state and

Walsh - Direct

12:39:46 1 spell your full name for the record.

12:39:47 2 THE WITNESS: My name is David Allan Walsh.

12:39:50 3 D-A-V-I-D A-L-L-A-N W-A-L-S-H.

12:39:53 4 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
12:39:56 5 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
12:39:58 6 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
12:40:00 7 truth, you do so affirm?

12:40:02 8 THE WITNESS: I do.

12:40:02 9 DAVID WALSH, the witness herein, after having  
12:40:02 10 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
12:40:03 11 follows:

12:40:03 12 DEPUTY CLERK: Thank you.

12:40:05 13 MR. DYKHUIS: May I approach, Your Honor?

12:40:07 14 THE COURT: Yes.

12:40:20 15 MR. FLYNN: May I approach, Your Honor?

12:40:21 16 THE COURT: Yes.

12:40:23 17 DIRECT EXAMINATION

12:40:25 18 BY MR. DYKHUIS:

12:40:26 19 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Walsh.

12:40:27 20 A. Good afternoon.

12:40:29 21 Q. Could you please introduce yourself to the Court.

12:40:30 22 A. My name is David Walsh.

12:40:34 23 Q. Have you ever worked for United Therapeutics?

12:40:36 24 A. Yes, I worked for them from 1999 to 2015.

12:40:44 25 Q. And can you generally describe the roles and

Walsh - Direct

12:40:47 1 responsibilities you had at UT?

12:40:48 2 A. When I started at UT, I was responsible for their  
12:40:53 3 Chicago manufacturing facility, making sure enough  
12:40:57 4 Treprostinil was produced to meet current needs, and to make  
12:41:01 5 sure the facility would pass the FDA inspection.

12:41:06 6 Q. And with respect to passing an FDA inspection, does  
12:41:09 7 that involve aspects of quality?

12:41:10 8 A. Yes.

12:41:13 9 Q. What other locations, if any, did you work at United  
12:41:17 10 Therapeutics?

12:41:17 11 A. In 2006 to '07, a new manufacturing facility was  
12:41:24 12 built in Silver Spring, Maryland, and we moved from Chicago  
12:41:29 13 to Silver Spring.

12:41:30 14 Q. And did any of your work at UT lead to patents?

12:41:33 15 A. Yes, several patents.

12:41:36 16 Q. If we could please pull up JTX 2.

12:41:39 17 And, Dr. Walsh, you have a copy in your binder  
12:41:41 18 as well, but it will be on the screen. Do you recognize  
12:41:44 19 this patent, Dr. Walsh?

12:41:46 20 A. Yes, this is one of the patents on which I'm an  
12:41:52 21 inventor.

12:41:53 22 Q. And does that -- just at a general level, what is  
12:41:58 23 this patent about, just at a high level?

12:42:00 24 A. It generally describes a new process to prepare  
12:42:03 25 Treprostinil.

Walsh - Direct

12:42:05 1 Q. And how was the process that you developed and  
12:42:11 2 performed at UT, the new process, different from the old  
12:42:15 3 process that you performed at UT?

12:42:17 4 A. Well, the main difference was we formed a salt of the  
12:42:22 5 Treprostinil free acid.

12:42:25 6 Q. And in the work that led to this patent, what kind of  
12:42:27 7 problems from you facing?

12:42:28 8 A. Well, in the move to Silver Spring, it was a larger  
12:42:33 9 facility, and we needed to scale up. Many of the reaction  
12:42:39 10 processes were fairly dangerous on large scale. So, we had  
12:42:46 11 to find a process that would fit into Silver Spring  
12:42:52 12 facility.

12:42:55 13 Q. Did the old process involve the use of solvents in  
12:42:58 14 any way?

12:42:59 15 A. Yes, many of the purifications were by column  
12:43:03 16 chromatography. They required large volumes of solvents and  
12:43:08 17 they -- the zoning restrictions in the Silver Spring  
12:43:12 18 facility didn't allow us to use those large volumes of  
12:43:15 19 solvents.

12:43:15 20 Q. And how did implementing a salt formation step  
12:43:18 21 address any of these problems?

12:43:21 22 A. Well, when we moved to Silver Spring, we outsourced  
12:43:24 23 many of the early steps in the process to contract  
12:43:28 24 manufacturers. And so, we didn't have to do the dangerous  
12:43:32 25 steps in Silver Spring. And salt formation allowed us to

Walsh - Direct

12:43:37 1 not have to use column chromatography and purifications. So  
12:43:41 2 we didn't need to have the large volumes of solvents.

12:43:46 3 Q. Did implementing the salt formation step affect  
12:43:49 4 handling ability for the operators?

12:43:51 5 A. Yes, it was much safer for the operators because  
12:43:55 6 Treprostinil itself, when dried, is a cotton-like material,  
12:44:00 7 fibrous, and it's staticky and it jumps out of the trays and  
12:44:07 8 it's very difficult to handle. And Treprostinil is a very  
12:44:09 9 potent drug, and our operators on occasion would be exposed  
12:44:14 10 to this. But the salt form is a nice granular crystalline  
12:44:20 11 material like sugar, and so it was much easier to handle.

12:44:24 12 Q. Did you ever perform any impurity and stability  
12:44:28 13 testing on Treprostinil made from the new process?

12:44:30 14 A. Yes.

12:44:31 15 Q. What were the results of that testing?

12:44:33 16 A. Well, when I got the results back, I was pleasantly  
12:44:37 17 surprised because in the salt form, there's much fewer  
12:44:43 18 impurities than in the free acid. Plus, upon looking at the  
12:44:50 19 stability data, it was much more stable at room temperature  
12:44:54 20 than free acid.

12:45:02 21 Q. You said you reviewed testing results for the new  
12:45:05 22 process. Did you also review stability and impurity data  
12:45:09 23 for the Treprostinil made from the old process at UT?

12:45:12 24 A. Yes. I was responsible for sending out each lot we  
12:45:19 25 prepped for testing. And so, when we -- reports came back,



Walsh - Direct

12:45:23 1 and I reviewed all the data.

12:45:25 2 Q. What fraction or percentage of batches made by UT did  
12:45:30 3 you review their quality?

12:45:32 4 A. Up to about 2012, I reviewed all -- every lot that  
12:45:37 5 went out during my tenure there.

12:45:41 6 Q. I want to talk about the Chicago and Silver Spring  
12:45:45 7 facilities. So when did UT manufacture Treprostinil out of  
12:45:49 8 each location?

12:45:49 9 A. It manufactured from about '98 to 2006 in the Chicago  
12:46:01 10 facility.

12:46:02 11 Q. And the Chicago facility was the old process?

12:46:05 12 A. Yes.

12:46:06 13 Q. When did you move to the Silver Spring?

12:46:08 14 A. In the 2006, 2007 time frame.

12:46:12 15 Q. And how were you involved in that move from Chicago  
12:46:15 16 to Silver Spring?

12:46:16 17 A. Well, initially, I was involved in the design of the  
12:46:22 18 new labs in Silver Spring, and then I oversaw the move of  
12:46:28 19 the production facility from Chicago to Silver Spring.

12:46:36 20 Q. And as far as inventory goes, were you able to  
12:46:39 21 manufacture in Chicago until that closed and immediately  
12:46:43 22 start up in Silver Spring?

12:46:45 23 A. No. We prepared a three-year inventory in Chicago to  
12:46:51 24 use while the Silver Spring facility was being validated and  
12:46:55 25 approved by the FDA.

Walsh - Direct

12:46:56 1 Q. And then what did you do with that stockpile?

12:46:59 2 A. Well, we moved it to Silver Spring and then used it  
12:47:03 3 until it was gone.

12:47:05 4 Q. And then did you ever sell the old process of  
12:47:08 5 Treprostinil made by the old process and Treprostinil made  
12:47:11 6 by the new process at the same time?

12:47:13 7 A. I don't believe so, no. We used up the old material  
12:47:16 8 first, and then once the facility was approved for  
12:47:21 9 manufacture, we used the new material, and the old material  
12:47:24 10 was gone.

12:47:25 11 Q. I want to talk a little more about stability testing  
12:47:29 12 results. If we could call up PTX 1563, please. And you  
12:47:33 13 have a copy in your binder, Dr. Walsh. It will also be on  
12:47:36 14 the screen. We can look at Page 2.

12:47:38 15 What is this document, Dr. Walsh?

12:47:41 16 A. I was writing a treatise on UT-15 at the time, and  
12:47:48 17 this is a chapter that summarized stability studies for  
12:47:55 18 compounds in the process, including Treprostinil.

12:48:01 19 MR. BURROWBRIDGE: Your Honor, we would move to  
12:48:02 20 admit PTX 1563.

12:48:05 21 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:48:06 22 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

12:48:08 23 (PTX Exhibit No. 1563 was admitted into  
12:48:09 24 evidence.)

12:48:09 25 BY MR. DYKHUIS:

Walsh - Direct

12:48:10 1 Q. If I can direct you, Dr. Walsh, to the page with --  
12:48:12 2 it's got a production number at the bottom ending in 7298.  
12:48:17 3 We can call that up on the screen as well.

12:48:41 4 It's up on the screen now, Dr. Walsh, if that's  
12:48:44 5 easier.

12:48:44 6 A. Yes.

12:48:45 7 Q. And so what is this describe -- page describing?

12:48:51 8 A. This is the results data from stability study on  
12:48:56 9 Treprostinil lot UT15-000701.

12:49:01 10 Q. And have you seen this data before?

12:49:03 11 A. I have.

12:49:07 12 Q. When would you have seen this data, Dr. Walsh?

12:49:09 13 A. When it was generated, when these lots were tested,  
12:49:15 14 and then, again, when I wrote this chapter.

12:49:19 15 Q. And was it your practice to review stability testing  
12:49:22 16 results when they were received?

12:49:24 17 A. I reviewed all stability data through 1999 to about  
12:49:32 18 2012.

12:49:34 19 Q. And then on the left, there's a column that says  
12:49:36 20 attributes. What is that describing?

12:49:38 21 A. Those are potential impurities that were seen in the  
12:49:44 22 Treprostinil.

12:49:44 23 Q. And then how about those columns on the right?

12:49:47 24 A. That's the data that was obtained from the time  
12:49:50 25 points and month from the stability testing.

Walsh - Direct

12:49:56 1 Q. Dr. Walsh, have you prepared some slides to eight to  
12:49:59 2 assist with the testimony today?

12:50:00 3 A. Yes.

12:50:00 4 Q. Let's look at slide number two, please. Now, what  
12:50:07 5 does this slide show, Dr. Walsh?

12:50:08 6 A. These are -- the top table is stability data from  
12:50:18 7 three lots of Treprostinil prepared at the Chicago facility.  
12:50:24 8 These happen to be the three lots that were submitted for  
12:50:27 9 NDA. For the NDA.

12:50:30 10 Q. And then what were the temperature and the humidity  
12:50:33 11 conditions?

12:50:33 12 A. Well, the first table is for an impurity 3AU09 at  
12:50:42 13 25 degrees and 60 percent relative humidity, which is room  
12:50:47 14 temperature.

12:50:48 15 Q. And then how about the bottom table?

12:50:50 16 A. And these are the same lot's data for a different  
12:50:56 17 impurity profile. It's the total related substances for --  
12:51:01 18 at the same temperature and relative humidity.

12:51:04 19 Q. And where does this data come from?

12:51:06 20 A. It comes from stability reports.

12:51:11 21 Q. Let's look at slide three, please.

12:51:12 22 What does this slide show, Dr. Walsh?

12:51:17 23 A. These are data at room temperature for material made  
12:51:23 24 by the new process at Silver Spring. And these are three  
12:51:26 25 typical lots of Treprostinil.

Walsh - Direct

12:51:30 1 Q. And then the top table mentions 3AU90. What is  
12:51:36 2 3AU90?

12:51:37 3 A. That's one of the impurities which is an isomer of  
12:51:40 4 Treprostinil.

12:51:42 5 Q. Let's look at Slide 4, please. What is shown on  
12:51:47 6 Slide 4, Dr. Walsh?

12:51:49 7 A. This is the old process from Chicago, the same  
12:51:55 8 date -- same type of data you saw before only at a six  
12:51:59 9 months in that refrigerated temperature.

12:52:05 10 Q. Let's call up Slide 5, please. What does this slide  
12:52:10 11 show, Dr. Walsh?

12:52:11 12 A. This is an -- a graphical representation of the data  
12:52:20 13 I just showed you. This is for 3AU90 at 25 degrees ambient  
12:52:31 14 -- ambient -- 25 degrees temperature, relative ambient  
12:52:34 15 relative humidity.

12:52:35 16 Q. And what is that top blue line?

12:52:40 17 A. That's the amount -- that's a graphical  
12:52:48 18 representation of 3AU90 from the old process.

12:52:56 19 Q. And what is that bottom orange line?

12:52:58 20 A. That's a graphical representation of 3AU90 amounts  
12:53:04 21 from the new process at six months.

12:53:20 22 Q. Thank you, Dr. Walsh.

12:53:21 23 If we could just go back for a moment. I want  
12:53:24 24 to be clear on something. Could we call up Slide 2?

12:53:35 25 Which document, Dr. Walsh, is the underlying

Walsh - Direct

12:53:38 1 data that's reflected on Slide Number 2?

12:53:41 2 A. It came from PTX 1563.

12:53:45 3 Q. Thank you.

12:53:46 4 And then if I could turn to Slide 3, please.

12:53:53 5 And then which document is the underlying data that's

12:53:55 6 reflected on slide number three, Dr. Walsh?

12:53:58 7 A. That's PTX 1564.

12:54:05 8 MR. DYKHUIS: And then just to confirm, Your

12:54:07 9 Honor we'd move 1563 and 1564 into evidence.

12:54:11 10 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

12:54:13 11 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without

12:54:14 12 objection.

12:54:21 13 MR. DYKHUIS: Let's go to Slide Number 6,

12:54:23 14 please.

12:54:23 15 (PTX Exhibit Nos. 1563 and 1564 were admitted

12:54:23 16 into evidence.)

12:54:23 17 BY MR. DYKHUIS:

12:54:25 18 Q. Dr. Walsh, what is shown on Slide Number 6?

12:54:27 19 A. This is a comparison of the two impurities of -- from

12:54:35 20 the old and new process at six months.

12:54:39 21 Q. And so, what are the two bars that are shown on the

12:54:41 22 left?

12:54:41 23 A. Well, the blue bar is 3AU90 at six months from the

12:54:50 24 old process and the orange bar, which is at baseline, is the

12:54:57 25 new process at six months and at room temperature. The old

12:55:01 1 process we had to store the Treprostinil at -- in the  
12:55:06 2 refrigerator at 5 degrees C.

12:55:07 3 Q. And then how about those two bars on the right? What  
12:55:09 4 do those describe?

12:55:10 5 A. Those are the total related substances for the old  
12:55:13 6 process in blue and the new process in orange.

12:55:17 7 Q. And thinking back to your time at United  
12:55:22 8 Therapeutics, did you compare impurities and stability data  
12:55:27 9 for Treprostinil made by the new process with that same data  
12:55:31 10 for Treprostinil made by the old process?

12:55:32 11 A. Yes, that -- that was part of my responsibilities.

12:55:37 12 Q. And how did the data compare?

12:55:39 13 A. Well, when I saw the data on the salt of  
12:55:45 14 Treprostinil, I was really pleasantly surprised because we  
12:55:49 15 were making batches that were much fewer impurities in them  
12:55:54 16 than the old process. In fact, some batches we made we  
12:56:00 17 couldn't see any impurities at all. I mean, I've never, in  
12:56:03 18 my 40 years' experience, seen an API that had no other  
12:56:07 19 impurities in it.

12:56:10 20 MR. DYKHUIS: Thank you, Dr. Walsh. We'll pass  
12:56:13 21 the witness.

12:56:13 22 THE COURT: All right. Cross-examination.

12:56:26 23 CROSS-EXAMINATION

12:56:26 24 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

12:56:27 25 Q. Hello, Dr. Walsh. Sanya Sukduang. Nice to meet you.

12:56:29 1 In your exhibits, you use color coding. For the  
12:56:32 2 old process blue, and color coding for the new process  
12:56:35 3 orange; is that right?

12:56:38 4 A. Correct.

12:56:39 5 Q. Is the blue Treprostinil free acid?

12:56:42 6 A. Yes.

12:56:43 7 Q. Is the orange Treprostinil diethanolamine salt?

12:56:46 8 A. Yes.

12:56:46 9 Q. So you're comparing a free acid stored stability and  
12:56:51 10 impurity profile against a salt impurity and stability  
12:56:55 11 profile?

12:56:55 12 A. Correct.

12:56:56 13 Q. Let's look at what the purity is of the Treprostinil  
12:57:00 14 free acid. Can we bring up JTX 002 which is the '066  
12:57:08 15 patent?

12:57:12 16 And can you go to column -- this is your patent;  
12:57:16 17 correct?

12:57:16 18 A. Yes.

12:57:17 19 Q. Can you go to Column 13 and -- excuse me, Column 14.

12:57:24 20 And this is taking the Treprostinil  
12:57:29 21 diethanolamine salt and converting it back to Treprostinil  
12:57:32 22 free acid; is that right?

12:57:32 23 A. Yes.

12:57:33 24 Q. Can you go to the bottom of Column 14? Do you see  
12:57:39 25 analytical testing of the Treprostinil diethanolamine salt



12:57:43 1 to Treprostinil? Do you see that table?

12:57:46 2 A. Yes.

12:57:50 3 Q. And this is HPLC purity data; correct?

12:57:54 4 A. I believe so. Yes.

12:58:02 5 Q. And this is the purity data of the Treprostinil free  
12:58:05 6 acid after it's being converted from the diethanolamine  
12:58:08 7 salt; is that correct?

12:58:09 8 A. Yes.

12:58:10 9 Q. And the purity of the Treprostinil free acid is --  
12:58:17 10 goes from 99.8 percent or 99.9 percent or 99.7 percent;  
12:58:25 11 correct?

12:58:25 12 A. Yes.

12:58:26 13 Q. And that's compared -- that's the purity of the  
12:58:29 14 Treprostinil free acid, not the Treprostinil diethanolamine  
12:58:36 15 salt; correct?

12:58:36 16 A. Yes.

12:58:37 17 Q. And the Treprostinil diethylamine salt is a different  
12:58:40 18 compound than Treprostinil free acid?

12:58:42 19 A. It's a different physical structure, yes.

12:58:47 20 MR. SUKDUANG: No further questions, Your Honor.

12:58:48 21 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

12:58:50 22 MR. DYKHUIS: No redirect, Your Honor.

12:58:51 23 THE COURT: All right. Dr. Walsh, thank you.

12:58:53 24 Watch your step as you're stepping down. Okay?

12:58:55 25 THE WITNESS: All right. Thank you.

Walsh - Cross

12:58:59 1 THE COURT: All right. So, why don't we break  
12:59:00 2 for lunch here, and we'll come back at 2 o'clock. We'll be  
12:59:07 3 in recess.

12:59:08 4 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

12:59:11 5 (Recess was taken.)

01:59:08 6 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

01:59:12 7 THE COURT: I'll be right back.

01:59:37 8 All right: Let's go ahead, Ms. Wu.

01:59:43 9 MS. WU: Plaintiff calls Dr. Karl Scheidt. May  
01:59:50 10 I approach?

01:59:55 11 THE COURT: Sure.

01:59:58 12 DEPUTY CLERK: How are you?

01:59:59 13 THE WITNESS: Good.

01:59:59 14 DEPUTY CLERK: Please state and spell your full  
02:00:02 15 name for the record.

02:00:03 16 THE WITNESS: Karl Andrew Scheidt K-A-R-L  
02:00:06 17 A-N-D-R-E-W S-C-H-E-I-D-T.

02:00:12 18 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
02:00:15 19 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
02:00:18 20 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
02:00:20 21 truth, you do so affirm?

02:00:21 22 THE WITNESS: I affirm. Thank you.

02:00:21 23 KARL SCHEIDT, the witness herein, after having  
02:00:21 24 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
02:00:24 25 follows:

Scheidt - Direct

02:00:24 1 DEPUTY CLERK: Dr. Scheidt, just make sure you  
02:00:27 2 speak into the microphone.

02:00:27 3 THE WITNESS: I will.

02:00:28 4 THE COURT: Thank you.

02:00:31 5 DIRECT EXAMINATION

02:00:31 6 BY MS. WU:

02:00:33 7 Q. Please state your name for the record.

02:00:34 8 A. Carl Andrew Scheidt.

02:00:36 9 Q. Did you prepare any materials to assist in your  
02:00:39 10 testimony today?

02:00:40 11 A. Yes, I did.

02:00:41 12 Q. Where are you currently employed?

02:00:42 13 A. Currently employed at Northwestern University. It's  
02:00:46 14 just north of Chicago in Evanston, Illinois.

02:00:49 15 Q. Please tell us about your education.

02:00:51 16 A. I -- my formal education, I received a bachelor's of  
02:00:55 17 science from the university of Notre Dame in South Bend,  
02:00:57 18 Indiana. After that, I earned Ph.D. in 1999 from Indiana  
02:01:03 19 University in Bloomington, Indiana. And after that, I was  
02:01:05 20 an NIH post-doctoral fellow at Harvard University from 1999  
02:01:09 21 until 2002 and then came back to the mid -- or excuse me  
02:01:14 22 went back to the Midwest where I assumed my position in  
02:01:17 23 Northwestern at 2002.

02:01:19 24 Q. Are you currently employed by Northwestern?

02:01:21 25 A. Yes, I am.

02:01:21 1 Q. What's your position?

02:01:23 2 A. My position at Northwestern, I'm a professor of  
02:01:26 3 chemistry and pharmacology.

02:01:31 4 Q. Do you specialize in any particular area?

02:01:33 5 A. Yes. My specialty is organic chemistry and medicinal  
02:01:38 6 chemistry. My laboratory is involved in the development of  
02:01:41 7 catalysis, asymmetric synthesis, and investigating and  
02:01:45 8 making bioactive molecules to understand and treat disease.

02:01:49 9 Q. Can you take a look in your binder at PTX 512. Do  
02:01:54 10 you recognize this document?

02:01:55 11 A. Yes, I do.

02:01:57 12 Q. What is it?

02:01:57 13 A. It's my CV.

02:02:01 14 Q. Does this document accurately reflect your  
02:02:04 15 credentials?

02:02:04 16 A. Yes, it does.

02:02:07 17 MS. WU: Your Honor, I move to admit PTX 512.

02:02:10 18 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

02:02:10 19 (PTX Exhibit No. 512 was admitted into  
02:02:12 20 evidence.)

02:02:12 21 MS. WU: At this time, Plaintiff tenders

02:02:14 22 Dr. Karl Scheidt as an expert in the field of organic and  
02:02:17 23 medicinal chemistry organic.

02:02:20 24 MS. KANNAPPAN: No objection.

02:02:20 25 THE COURT: All right. You may proceed.

02:02:23 1 BY MS. WU:

02:02:23 2 Q. What testimony will you be providing today?

02:02:26 3 A. The testimony I'll -- I'm providing today is to --  
02:02:28 4 that the asserted claims of the '066 patent are valid.

02:02:33 5 Q. What -- from what perspective to did you evaluate the  
02:02:37 6 '066 apparently?

02:02:37 7 A. I evaluated the '066 patent from the perspective of a  
02:02:41 8 POSA.

02:02:41 9 Q. What is a level of skill of a POSA for the '066  
02:02:46 10 patent?

02:02:46 11 A. So I believe this is the same slide that Dr. Nuckolls  
02:02:48 12 used on Monday, and I am applying the same standards for  
02:02:52 13 POSA.

02:02:53 14 Q. What materials did you review in forming your  
02:02:56 15 opinions?

02:02:56 16 A. In forming my opinions, I considered the four corners  
02:02:59 17 of the '066 patent.

02:03:01 18 Q. Can you provide an overview of the issues you will  
02:03:05 19 address today.

02:03:05 20 A. Yes, next slide, please.

02:03:10 21 Today, I'm going to be providing opinions around  
02:03:13 22 Dr. Winkler's argument around written description and  
02:03:16 23 specifically the impurities limitation, and I was going to  
02:03:18 24 speak to indefiniteness of storage, but I believe I no  
02:03:21 25 longer have to do that.

Scheidt - Direct

02:03:22 1 Q. So, let's talk about the impurities limitation. What  
02:03:27 2 were the impurities limitations you analyzed?

02:03:31 3 A. So if we go to the next slide, the impurities  
02:03:32 4 limitation in Claim 1 here states providing a starting batch  
02:03:35 5 of Treprostinil having one or more impurities resulting from  
02:03:39 6 prior alkylation and hydrolysis steps. Wherein said  
02:03:42 7 alkylation is alkylation of benzindene triol. And secondly,  
02:03:46 8 a level of one or more impurities found in the starting  
02:03:48 9 batch of Treprostinil is lower in the pharmaceutical  
02:03:51 10 composition.

02:03:53 11 Q. Have you seen Dr. Nuckolls's slide providing an  
02:03:56 12 overview of impurities as described in Claim 1?

02:03:59 13 A. Yes, I have. Next slide, please.

02:04:04 14 Q. Now, have you adapted this slide based on your review  
02:04:07 15 of the '066 patent?

02:04:10 16 A. Yes, I have. I've taken this sort of generic green  
02:04:12 17 color and utilized specific mention of color in the  
02:04:15 18 specification. I have a more refined overview of the  
02:04:18 19 overall process.

02:04:22 20 Q. Dr. Nuckolls detected at the presence of impurities  
02:04:24 21 in his BTO batch. You do as well. Why?

02:04:27 22 A. Well, right. So this little square here is an  
02:04:30 23 impurity in BTO. And as we've learned this week, that every  
02:04:33 24 reaction produces impurities and that no compound is  
02:04:38 25 100 percent pure, so I wanted to account for that in the

02:04:40 1 starting material of BTO.

02:04:42 2 Q. And you have assigned a white color to your BTO  
02:04:45 3 batch. How would a POSA have known the color of BTO as of  
02:04:47 4 2007?

02:04:48 5 A. So, as of 2007, a POSA would understand that BTO was  
02:04:52 6 colorless because BTO has a very similar structure to  
02:04:55 7 Treprostinil and neither one has a chromophore, and so  
02:04:59 8 Treprostinil is known to be white or colorless. So a POSA  
02:05:02 9 would understand that the BTO would also be the same -- have  
02:05:05 10 the same lack of color.

02:05:07 11 Q. Can you walk us through slide PDX 7.6 to explain what  
02:05:12 12 you're depicting.

02:05:13 13 A. Yes, certainly. So, it's an overall process, and the  
02:05:17 14 beakers represent reaction containers. So you BTO, which  
02:05:21 15 we've heard a quite a bit about, and you undergo an  
02:05:24 16 alkylation step. And I want to be very clear about this.  
02:05:27 17 This is not a chalkboard or a piece of paper. This is  
02:05:30 18 really -- with a single reaction on it. It's the entirety  
02:05:34 19 of BTO plus the reagents plus the solvent. And you do an  
02:05:38 20 alkylation step which generates the light brown material  
02:05:41 21 which I'll get to in a minute.

02:05:43 22 After you -- the alkylation product is formed,  
02:05:45 23 it then undergoes hydrolysis, which generates a starting  
02:05:48 24 batch which is pale yellow color. And then that starting  
02:05:53 25 batch is then -- undergoes a salt formation step, which

02:05:56 1 produces Treprostinil as an off-white material.

02:06:00 2 Q. So, what, if anything, does the '066 patent tell a  
02:06:04 3 POSA about alkylation impurities?

02:06:06 4 A. If we go to the next slide, please. Here is  
02:06:10 5 Example 1. It is the alkylation of benzindene triol, and  
02:06:14 6 you take -- what I've done is separated the beakers slide.  
02:06:18 7 Starting with BTO, it undergoes an alkylation step. What  
02:06:22 8 I've done is selected some from the specification. Here is  
02:06:25 9 sort of the recipe for this reaction. Here are all the  
02:06:29 10 reactions components save the Celite, which they use later.  
02:06:32 11 But they take these colorless materials -- and again, I also  
02:06:36 12 want to note that this third line here, this  
02:06:39 13 chloroacetonitrile Is used in two-fold excess. What they do  
02:06:41 14 is they combine it and they do an alkylation step not just  
02:06:44 15 on a single molecule or only a molecule of BTO, but  
02:06:48 16 everything is in the flask.

02:06:50 17 And let's sort of work through this text here.  
02:06:52 18 So after completion of the reaction, the reaction mixture  
02:06:55 19 was filtered with or without C light. That's to remove some  
02:06:58 20 of the impurities that were generated in the reaction. Then  
02:07:02 21 in this green box here, the filtrate was concentrated. You  
02:07:05 22 just pull a vacuum to remove some solvent, and what you're  
02:07:08 23 left with is a light brown viscous liquid benzidine nitrile  
02:07:12 24 indicated here. That's why I've used light brown in my  
02:07:15 25 slides, and a POSA would understand that this light brown



02:07:18 1 indicates the generation of impurities from the alkylation  
02:07:21 2 step. And this last sentence here, the crude benzidine  
02:07:27 3 nitrile, crude means it's unpurified meaning it has  
02:07:31 4 impurities, and they use this in the next step without  
02:07:32 5 purification.

02:07:33 6 Q. I see you've also made some blue highlighting the  
02:07:36 7 progress of the reaction was monitored by TLC. Why did you  
02:07:40 8 highlight that?

02:07:41 9 A. It's really important here. So the progress of the  
02:07:43 10 reaction was monitored by TLC. We've heard a little bit  
02:07:46 11 about chromatography over the last three days. This is thin  
02:07:48 12 layer chromatography. It's a very useful and important  
02:07:51 13 technique in chemistry.

02:07:52 14 Q. Can you explain how TLC works?

02:07:54 15 A. Yes, I provided -- yes, on the next slide, please.

02:07:59 16 I provided a little tutorial, so with  
02:08:02 17 permission. Thin layer of chromatography is what POSAs or  
02:08:06 18 chemists use to monitor reactions. So what we have here are  
02:08:10 19 three -- I guess these are pickle jars or just jars, what  
02:08:13 20 you can do here. I have represented at the beginning of the  
02:08:17 21 reaction and then we'll see something in the middle of the  
02:08:19 22 reaction and then finally at the end.

02:08:21 23 Now, at the beginning of the reaction, you take  
02:08:23 24 a thin layer chromatography plate and you have an authentic  
02:08:27 25 standard of the starting material and an authentic standard

## Scheidt - Direct

02:08:30 1 of the product, and in this middle lane, you have the  
02:08:33 2 reaction that you sample. And so you place it in the  
02:08:36 3 liquids, and by capillary action, the solvent front moves  
02:08:39 4 up. And chromatography can -- is the separation of  
02:08:43 5 components from a mixture.

02:08:45 6 And at the very start of the reaction, you have  
02:08:48 7 no desired product. You obviously have almost all your  
02:08:50 8 starting material, but what I have here in this yellow --  
02:08:54 9 represented by this yellow dot is the presence of an  
02:08:56 10 impurity in the starting material possibly. I want to note  
02:08:59 11 that these colors are just representative to be -- so we can  
02:09:03 12 see them. Many times chemists use either UV light or  
02:09:07 13 staining so that the compounds will change color. So  
02:09:10 14 starting materials are not always blue and starting products  
02:09:13 15 are not all red, so this is at the beginning of the  
02:09:16 16 reaction.

02:09:16 17 At the middle of the reaction, so let's say four  
02:09:19 18 hours or six hours or 12 hours later, you're not sure if the  
02:09:22 19 reaction is done yet or not. Here you've got your standard  
02:09:25 20 on the left and your standard on the right, and you start  
02:09:27 21 taking an aliquot of the reaction and you run this middle  
02:09:31 22 lane, and you see a difference. What you see is now the  
02:09:34 23 reaction is proceeding, so you're generating some of the  
02:09:36 24 product. Some of your starting material has now dissipated.  
02:09:39 25 You can actually qualitative it assess amounts in TLC.

Scheidt - Direct

02:09:43 1 Maybe not down to the thousandths place, but you can see  
02:09:46 2 whether or not things are changing in a qualitative sense.  
02:09:48 3 But importantly, what I have here is you can notice possibly  
02:09:51 4 that there are impurities that are generated from the  
02:09:54 5 reaction because you have a standard here that you know what  
02:09:58 6 you brought into the reaction at the start. Now, take  
02:10:02 7 another TLC maybe 24, 48 hours later, and that's on the far  
02:10:06 8 right of the slide.

02:10:08 9 So a POSA knows when a reaction is finished when  
02:10:10 10 they run a TLC plate like this. And here, again, we have  
02:10:14 11 the same mobility of the starting material, and it's no  
02:10:16 12 longer -- it's to longer in this lane here. It's  
02:10:20 13 disappeared. We could possibly see the generation of more  
02:10:23 14 impurities, we could see other things, but the point is that  
02:10:26 15 thin layer chromatography is a very useful and enabling way  
02:10:30 16 to monitor reactions.

02:10:32 17 Q. Were you why in the courtroom when Dr. Winkler  
02:10:35 18 provided his testimony?

02:10:36 19 A. I was, yes.

02:10:37 20 Q. Did you hear Dr. Winkler testify that there is too  
02:10:40 21 little material to identify a measure of impurities via TLC?

02:10:44 22 A. I did hear that.

02:10:45 23 Q. Do you agree with his opinion?

02:10:46 24 A. I don't agree with that. I think that Dr. Winkler  
02:10:50 25 might have been comparing apples to oranges here. So the

Scheidt - Direct

02:10:53 1 impurities that I heard about were very small impurities  
02:10:56 2 from isolated materials. Not reaction mixtures. So this --  
02:11:01 3 these TLC plates were taken directly out of the reaction.  
02:11:04 4 There's no finished product where we're assessing purity  
02:11:04 5 levels.

02:11:07 6 So as I mentioned, they use a full two-fold  
02:11:10 7 excess of one of the reagents. That's still in the reaction  
02:11:13 8 that you're sampling. So there are impurities that are  
02:11:16 9 generated during alkylation. You would be able to visualize  
02:11:19 10 that.

02:11:20 11 Q. Were you in the courtroom when Dr. Batra's video was  
02:11:24 12 played?

02:11:24 13 A. I was, yes.

02:11:24 14 Q. Did you hear his testimony about TLC?

02:11:27 15 A. I did.

02:11:28 16 Q. Now, how, if at all, does his testimony impact your  
02:11:31 17 opinions?

02:11:31 18 A. I think it agrees with mine since I recall he said  
02:11:34 19 that TLC can be used to visualize impurities.

02:11:38 20 Q. And when I were you in the courtroom when  
02:11:41 21 Dr. Tuladhar's video was played?

02:11:43 22 A. I was.

02:11:44 23 Q. And did you hear Dr. Tuladhar testify that impurities  
02:11:47 24 from the alkylation step comes from the reagent?

02:11:49 25 A. I did hear that, yes.

02:11:50 1 Q. And how, if at all, does that testimony impact your  
02:11:54 2 opinions?

02:11:54 3 A. That agrees with my testimony that impurities that  
02:11:56 4 are generated in the alkylation step with possibly the  
02:12:00 5 reagent, you would be able to see those by TLC and they  
02:12:04 6 would be generated in that reaction step.

02:12:06 7 Q. Can the alkylation step take place without the  
02:12:09 8 reagent?

02:12:09 9 A. No, it cannot.

02:12:12 10 Q. All right. Let's move on from alkylation impurities.  
02:12:14 11 What, if anything, does the '066 patent tell a POSA about  
02:12:19 12 hydrolysis impurities?

02:12:19 13 A. So, next slide, please. So here is Example 2 of the  
02:12:25 14 hydrolysis of the benzindene nitrile. And I've highlighted,  
02:12:28 15 again, that the inventors used TLC to monitor the progress  
02:12:31 16 of the reaction. So they're use that same technique that I  
02:12:33 17 just had that tutorial on.

02:12:35 18 At the top of the second column here in purple,  
02:12:38 19 it says the aqueous layer was diluted with water and  
02:12:41 20 extracted with ethyl acetate to remove impurities soluble in  
02:12:49 21 ethyl acetate. To me, that indicates that during this  
02:12:51 22 reaction, impurities are generated. Some of them are  
02:12:54 23 removed, but importantly, they are generated during the  
02:12:56 24 alkylation and hydrolysis steps.

02:13:00 25 In the blue box it says -- it states to the

02:13:03 1 solution of Treprostinil in reactor was added activated  
02:13:06 2 carbon. Activated carbon is a material that POSA -- a POSA  
02:13:10 3 knows can remove some, but not all, impurities, indicating  
02:13:14 4 that impurities have been generated in this reaction.

02:13:18 5 Lastly, in the yellow box, it says the filtrate,  
02:13:22 6 which is pale yellow and it's pretty important to a POSA  
02:13:25 7 here, was reduced to a volume and you -- for direct use in  
02:13:29 8 the next step, and this is where we now have the starting  
02:13:32 9 batch of Treprostinil. So we've gone from the brown,  
02:13:36 10 alkylated material. It's undergone a hydrolysis step, and  
02:13:39 11 there's been some impurities removed, but some impurities  
02:13:42 12 remain because it's light yellow in color.

02:13:47 13 Q. Claim 1 requires a lowering of one or more impurities  
02:13:50 14 found in the starting batch. What, if anything, does the  
02:13:53 15 '066 patent tell a POSA about lowering impurities from the  
02:13:57 16 starting batch?

02:13:58 17 A. Next slide, please.

02:14:01 18 So, here, in the Example 5, it's quite explicit.  
02:14:04 19 The conversion of Treprostinil diethanolamine salt to  
02:14:08 20 Treprostinil. They take the starting batch which we've --  
02:14:11 21 which a POSA would understand is pale yellow from the  
02:14:14 22 specification and undergoes a salt formation step which  
02:14:18 23 generates an off-white solid. So, the yellow color is  
02:14:23 24 removed, indicating a lowering of impurities of the starting  
02:14:26 25 batch.

02:14:28 1 Q. Is there any other disclosure in the patent about  
02:14:30 2 lowered impurities?

02:14:31 3 A. Yes, I believe there is. Next slide, please.

02:14:35 4 The specification directly teaches the  
02:14:38 5 impurities limitation. And I have highlighted here the  
02:14:41 6 impurities carried over from intermediate steps, that is  
02:14:44 7 alkylation of triol and hydrolysis of benzidine nitrile, are  
02:14:47 8 removed during the carbon treatment and salt formation step.

02:14:52 9 Q. Where is this disclosure?

02:14:53 10 A. This is in column 17 of the '066 patent, lines 27  
02:14:58 11 through 40.

02:14:59 12 Q. Did you hear Dr. Winkler's testimony about this  
02:15:02 13 passage?

02:15:02 14 A. I did hear that testimony.

02:15:04 15 Q. Do you agree with his interpretation of this passage?

02:15:06 16 A. I don't agree with his interpretation.

02:15:09 17 Q. Why not?

02:15:09 18 A. I think Dr. Winkler is being very specific and  
02:15:14 19 restrictive about his application of only BTO being  
02:15:16 20 alkylated. It's an alkylation step, and it encompasses all  
02:15:20 21 the components of the reaction, including reagents and  
02:15:23 22 solvents.

02:15:24 23 Q. Did you hear Dr. Winkler testify that the patent  
02:15:27 24 lacks written description because the specification does not  
02:15:30 25 describe the identification or measurement of specific

02:15:34 1       impurities?

02:15:34 2       A.       I did hear that testimony, yes.

02:15:36 3       Q.       Do you agree with him?

02:15:38 4       A.       I disagree with that.

02:15:40 5       Q.       Why do you disagree?

02:15:41 6       A.       Let's go to the next slide, please.

02:15:43 7               I've just put up, again, for the Court, this  
02:15:46 8       overall process tracking color changes. Your eyes are very,  
02:15:51 9       very powerful -- or I guess very good qualitative analytical  
02:15:55 10       tools. We go from -- a POSA would understand you go from a  
02:15:58 11       colorless material. After you do an alkylation, it  
02:16:02 12       generates something that's brown. And after that brownness,  
02:16:05 13       then there's some material that's removed but not all, since  
02:16:09 14       the starting batch is pale yellow. And then the salt  
02:16:12 15       formation step then lowers that color. So, a POSA would  
02:16:15 16       understand that there's a generation of impurities and then  
02:16:18 17       a lowering of impurities from the starting batch to  
02:16:22 18       Treprostinil.

02:16:23 19       Q.       Does the specification of the '066 patent convey to a  
02:16:26 20       POSA that the inventors were in possession of the impurity  
02:16:29 21       limitations of Claims 1, 2, 3, and 6?

02:16:33 22       A.       Yes.

02:16:36 23               MS. WU: I pass the witness.

02:16:37 24               THE COURT: All right. Cross.

02:16:41 25               CROSS-EXAMINATION



02:16:41 1 BY MS. KANNAPPAN:

02:16:45 2 Q. Dr. Scheidt, you just opined that color changes could  
02:16:50 3 indicate purity changes; right?

02:16:53 4 A. Yes, I did.

02:16:53 5 Q. And when we talked about this during your deposition,  
02:16:57 6 you agreed that color changes do not identify which  
02:17:00 7 impurities were changed; correct?

02:17:02 8 A. That's correct.

02:17:03 9 Q. And color changes do not identify the level of  
02:17:07 10 specific impurities that were changed; correct?

02:17:10 11 A. I believe that they would indicate the level of  
02:17:12 12 overall impurities changed, not specific impurity changes.

02:17:17 13 Q. And if we could go to PTX 201 at the Bates ending in  
02:17:23 14 781. That's going to show up on your screen, Dr. Scheidt.

02:17:30 15 A. Mm-hmm.

02:17:31 16 Q. Do you see that BTO up here --

02:17:36 17 MS. WU: What page?

02:17:38 18 MS. KANNAPPAN: It's not in the binder, but it  
02:17:40 19 is your PTX exhibit.

02:17:40 20 BY MS. KANNAPPAN:

02:17:41 21 Q. If you want to look at other pages, you can,  
02:17:43 22 Dr. Scheidt, but I just wanted to point you to a very  
02:17:45 23 specific disclosure here. Do you see that it says BTO  
02:17:48 24 appearance can be white to pale yellowish powder?

02:17:51 25 A. Yes, I see that.

02:17:55 1 Q. And then if we go to your demonstratives, PDX 7.7 and  
02:18:00 2 PDX 7.9, this is Example 1 and Example 2 from the patent;  
02:18:06 3 correct?

02:18:06 4 A. That's correct. Yes.

02:18:08 5 Q. And you pointed to some ethyl acetate Celite pad  
02:18:11 6 steps and activated carbon steps in these examples; correct?

02:18:14 7 A. Yes, that's correct.

02:18:16 8 Q. And you testified that those were a purification  
02:18:18 9 steps; right?

02:18:18 10 A. That's correct.

02:18:21 11 Q. And these steps happened before the pale yellow  
02:18:24 12 filtrate comes out at the end of Example 2; right?

02:18:26 13 A. Yes.

02:18:28 14 Q. And there's no disclosure in these examples of how  
02:18:32 15 much of any particular impurity was removed by the Celite  
02:18:35 16 pad step, the ethyl acetate steps, or the activated carbon  
02:18:39 17 steps; right?

02:18:39 18 A. There's no specific amounts.

02:18:42 19 Q. And you also talked a little bit about TLC. The  
02:18:45 20 patent does not disclose using TLC to identify or measure  
02:18:50 21 impurities; correct?

02:18:50 22 A. I disagree with that.

02:18:52 23 Q. Okay. What the literal sentence says is the progress  
02:18:55 24 of the reaction was monitored; correct?

02:18:57 25 A. It does say monitored, yes.

02:18:59 1 Q. Does it use the word -- or does it say that there's  
02:19:01 2 identification or measurement of impurities by TLC, the  
02:19:04 3 patent?

02:19:05 4 A. The patent uses monitored by TLC, and I think the  
02:19:09 5 demonstrative I had indicated what one can do when they're  
02:19:13 6 monitoring a reaction by TLC.

02:19:14 7 Q. And in TLC, you can measure the amounts of very  
02:19:18 8 specific impurities? Is that your testimony?

02:19:20 9 A. My testimony is that, as I've shown on my slide, is  
02:19:22 10 that you can get a qualitative assessment of the amounts of  
02:19:25 11 whatever it is that you're developing using that  
02:19:28 12 chromatographic technique.

02:19:29 13 Q. So qualitative but not quantitative; correct?

02:19:31 14 A. Qualitative, correct.

02:19:34 15 Q. But not quantitative?

02:19:34 16 A. Not quantitative. Qualitative.

02:19:38 17 Q. And until your testimony today, you had not  
02:19:41 18 considered any inventor testimony in your written  
02:19:44 19 description analysis; correct?

02:19:44 20 A. Could you could you restate the question, please.

02:19:47 21 Q. Sure. Until your direct examination today, you had  
02:19:52 22 not considered any inventor testimony in your written  
02:19:56 23 description analysis; correct?

02:19:57 24 A. Have I considered? I've got to -- sorry. I've got  
02:20:08 25 to think. One more time, please. I apologize. I want to

02:20:10 1 make sure.

02:20:11 2 Q. Maybe I'll do it simpler.

02:20:12 3 A. Okay.

02:20:12 4 Q. When you did your written description analysis, you  
02:20:14 5 only looked at the four corners of the patent for your  
02:20:16 6 reports; correct?

02:20:17 7 A. That's correct. Thank you.

02:20:18 8 Q. And you specifically said "I didn't want to look at  
02:20:19 9 the inventor testimony that Dr. Winkler referred to"; right?

02:20:23 10 A. I didn't say -- I didn't say that specifically.

02:20:25 11 Q. Did you consider the inventor testimony in your  
02:20:28 12 written description analysis in your reports?

02:20:29 13 A. I considered the four corners of the '066 patent.

02:20:31 14 Q. So is that a no?

02:20:32 15 A. I considered the four corners of the '066 patent.

02:20:35 16 Q. But not the inventor testimony?

02:20:37 17 A. I -- I considered the four corners of the '066  
02:20:42 18 patent.

02:20:42 19 Q. Okay. All right. Sorry, Dr. Scheidt.

02:20:48 20 MS. KANNAPPAN: No further questions, Your  
02:20:49 21 Honor.

02:20:49 22 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

02:20:51 23 MS. WU: Nothing from Plaintiff.

02:20:52 24 THE COURT: All right, Dr. Scheidt. Watch your  
02:20:54 25 step.

Clark - Direct

02:20:54 1 THE WITNESS: Thank you, sir.

02:20:57 2 MR. CARSTEN: Hello, Your Honor. United

02:21:00 3 Therapeutics calls Dr. Andrew Clark to the stand as its next  
02:21:03 4 witness, please.

02:21:04 5 THE COURT: Okay.

02:21:14 6 DEPUTY CLERK: Please states and spell your full  
02:21:19 7 name for the record.

02:21:20 8 THE WITNESS: Andrew Clark. Surname is  
02:21:24 9 C-L-A-R-K.

02:21:24 10 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
02:21:25 11 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
02:21:28 12 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
02:21:30 13 truth, you do so affirm?

02:21:31 14 THE WITNESS: Yes, I do.

02:21:31 15 ANDREW CLARK, the witness herein, after having  
02:21:31 16 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
02:21:33 17 follows:

02:21:33 18 DEPUTY CLERK: Just make sure you speak into the  
02:21:35 19 microphone the best you can.

02:21:40 20 MR. CARSTEN: May I proceed, Your Honor?

02:21:40 21 DIRECT EXAMINATION

02:21:40 22 BY MR. CARSTEN:

02:21:45 23 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Clark.

02:21:46 24 A. Good afternoon.

02:21:47 25 Q. Would you please introduce yourself to the Court.

Clark - Direct

02:21:49 1 A. Yes, my name is Andrew Reginald Clark.

02:21:52 2 Q. Could you spell it, please.

02:21:53 3 A. C-L-A-R-K is the surname.

02:21:55 4 Q. Okay. What do you do for a living, Dr. Clark?

02:21:58 5 A. I am currently president and general manager of the  
02:22:04 6 Aerogen Pharma Corporation which I helped found in 2015.

02:22:08 7 Q. Do have you a binder in front of you?

02:22:09 8 A. I do.

02:22:10 9 Q. Would you turn in that to PTX 505, please. And get  
02:22:17 10 your glasses out. Is your eye okay?

02:22:19 11 A. Oh, yeah. The eye is fine.

02:22:23 12 PTX 005?

02:22:27 13 Q. PTX 505. Please, Dr. Clark.

02:22:30 14 A. PTX 505. Yes.

02:22:33 15 Q. What is that?

02:22:34 16 A. That's my Curriculum Vitae.

02:22:38 17 Q. True and correct copy of it?

02:22:40 18 A. Yes, it is, as far as I can see.

02:22:43 19 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, we move to admit PTX  
02:22:45 20 505.

02:22:46 21 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

02:22:48 22 (PTX Exhibit No. 505 was admitted into  
02:22:48 23 evidence.)

02:22:48 24 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

02:22:49 25 BY MR. CARSTEN:

Clark - Direct

02:22:49 1 Q. How long have you been working in the pharmaceutical  
02:22:54 2 industry, Dr. Clark?

02:22:54 3 A. I joined the industry in 1980, so 41, 42 years.

02:23:04 4 Q. Have you been working in inhalation product for that  
02:23:08 5 entire time?

02:23:08 6 A. Oddly enough, yes.

02:23:10 7 Q. Have you ever worked on any drugs pertaining to  
02:23:15 8 pulmonary hypertension?

02:23:15 9 A. Yes, recently I acted in a role as chief technical  
02:23:21 10 officer at Respira Therapeutics. We were developing a  
02:23:24 11 powder formulation of the PD5 inhibitor for acute therapy in  
02:23:29 12 PAH patient.

02:23:30 13 Q. Any others?

02:23:31 14 A. The current role I have, we were developing  
02:23:36 15 epoprostenol, and the target indication was for delivery of  
02:23:41 16 epoprostenol by aerosol on ventilators in patients  
02:23:44 17 recovering from heart surgery and cardiopulmonary bypass.

02:23:49 18 Q. What other types of inhalation products have you  
02:23:51 19 worked on in the course of your 40 years in the industry?

02:23:53 20 A. If I could refer to Dr. Gonda's demographic, all of  
02:23:58 21 them. I've been involved in designing nebulizers, MDIs,  
02:24:03 22 dry-powder inhalers, and I did some original work even on  
02:24:07 23 the small mist inhalers. On formulations for all of those  
02:24:11 24 inhaler forms.

02:24:13 25 Q. Have you worked on any products that have secured FDA

Clark - Direct

02:24:16 1 approval?

02:24:16 2 A. So far in the inhalation space five.

02:24:26 3 Q. By 2006, how familiar are you with the process of  
02:24:29 4 developing a dry-powder for a dry-powder inhalation?

02:24:33 5 A. 26 years long. Very familiar.

02:24:37 6 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, we'd move to admit  
02:24:38 7 Dr. Clark as an expert in inhaled drug -- inhaled drugs,  
02:24:42 8 formulations, and devices and their development including  
02:24:45 9 dry-powder formulations and dry-powder inhalers.

02:24:48 10 MS. KANNAPPAN: No objection.

02:24:49 11 THE COURT: All right. You may proceed.

02:24:50 12 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

02:24:50 13 BY MR. CARSTEN:

02:24:52 14 Q. Dr. Clark, have you formed any opinions in this case?

02:24:54 15 A. Yes.

02:24:56 16 Q. Okay. Have you prepared demonstratives to help  
02:25:02 17 assist the explanation of your testimony today?

02:25:04 18 A. Yes.

02:25:06 19 Q. PDX 10.2. This is -- what is this, Dr. Clark?

02:25:10 20 A. This is the '793 patent.

02:25:15 21 Q. Does it look familiar to you?

02:25:16 22 A. It does, yes.

02:25:16 23 Q. Have you spent much time with this one in the work of  
02:25:20 24 your case?

02:25:20 25 A. Yes, I have read it several times.



Clark - Direct

02:25:22 1 Q. Were you instructed to apply any particular filter or  
02:25:25 2 frame of reference when you considered the '793 patent?

02:25:28 3 A. The filter is, essentially, what a person of ordinary  
02:25:38 4 skill in the art of the date of 2006 patent would read into  
02:25:43 5 and see and understand from the patent.

02:25:46 6 Q. And what was your definition of person of ordinary  
02:25:50 7 skill in the art that you applied here?

02:25:51 8 A. Somebody who's got an M.D. or a Ph.D. and at least a  
02:25:56 9 couple years' experience in terms of developing inhaled  
02:26:00 10 formulations. I also put in some understanding of pulmonary  
02:26:06 11 hypertension and treatment of it.

02:26:07 12 Q. Now, you understand that Dr. Gonda, the expert on the  
02:26:11 13 other side that you're going to be addressing, he also  
02:26:15 14 provided a level of ordinary skill in the art; is that  
02:26:18 15 right?

02:26:18 16 A. That's correct.

02:26:19 17 Q. Do you guys have the same level of ordinary skill?

02:26:21 18 A. Not quite. I think they're very similar, apart from  
02:26:26 19 the requirement for some understanding or understanding of  
02:26:33 20 treatments of pulmonary hypertension.

02:26:34 21 Q. Okay. Regardless of which of those two level of  
02:26:38 22 ordinary skills that you applied here, would your opinions  
02:26:41 23 change?

02:26:41 24 A. No.

02:26:42 25 Q. Would you qualify as a level -- as having a level of

Clark - Direct

02:26:46 1 ordinary skill in the art for either one?

02:26:48 2 A. In 2006, I would have greatly exceeded a POSA of  
02:26:54 3 ordinary skill in the art.

02:26:55 4 Q. Now, that raises an interesting point, Dr. Clark.  
02:26:58 5 How was it that you were able to apply the level of ordinary  
02:27:02 6 skill in the art as of 2006 when you yourself were more  
02:27:05 7 qualified than that as of that date?

02:27:06 8 A. By reviewing publications that were around at that  
02:27:09 9 time and actually by trying to put myself in the position  
02:27:13 10 where I was a POSA with this level of skill, which is  
02:27:19 11 actually back in 1980s.

02:27:28 12 Q. You mentioned that you had looked at a couple of or  
02:27:30 13 several references from the rough timeframe of 2006 to help  
02:27:35 14 guide your analysis. What references were they?

02:27:37 15 A. The two major ones were the Labiris, which is  
02:27:40 16 actually referenced in the '793 patent. And a publication  
02:27:45 17 by Telko and Hickey, which describes, essentially, the  
02:27:50 18 things to look for and how to develop pulmonary dry powder  
02:27:55 19 formulation.

02:27:55 20 Q. Would you turn in your binder to PTX 905. Let me  
02:28:00 21 know when you're there.

02:28:01 22 A. Yeah. It's open.

02:28:04 23 Q. What is this?

02:28:05 24 A. This is the paper by Telko and Hickey describing,  
02:28:11 25 essentially, the essential elements to look at and the

Clark - Direct

02:28:14 1 processes for developing a dry-powder formulation from a  
02:28:18 2 molecule.

02:28:19 3 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, we'd move PTX 905 into  
02:28:24 4 evidence.

02:28:25 5 MS. KRICKL: No objection.

02:28:26 6 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

02:28:27 7 (PTX Exhibit No. 905 was admitted into  
02:28:27 8 evidence.)

02:28:28 9 BY MR. CARSTEN:

02:28:28 10 Q. So, can you just give us an overview on what Telko  
02:28:33 11 and Hickey, dated 2005, PTX 905, teaches to a person of  
02:28:38 12 ordinary skill in the art who's interested in developing a  
02:28:41 13 dry-powder formulation as of 2006?

02:28:44 14 A. Essentially teaches the general requirements for the  
02:28:51 15 molecule that was being developed as a dry-powder  
02:28:54 16 formulation. It has some highlights and issues to look out  
02:28:59 17 for during that development, the methods for actually  
02:29:04 18 size-reducing the material for blending the material, and  
02:29:08 19 then for testing those materials appropriately to show that  
02:29:12 20 the dry-powder formulation was acceptable.

02:29:15 21 Q. And you mentioned another article that you had  
02:29:18 22 considered in connection with your work in this case, the  
02:29:22 23 Labiris reference. Would you please turn in your binder to  
02:29:24 24 PTX 271.

02:29:29 25 A. 271.

Clark - Direct

02:29:37 1 Q. What's that, Dr. Clark?

02:29:38 2 A. This is the publication by Labiris and Dolovich.

02:29:41 3 Q. And is this the publication that you considered in  
02:29:45 4 connection with your work in this case?

02:29:46 5 A. Yes.

02:29:47 6 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, we'd introduce PTX 271  
02:29:49 7 into evidence.

02:29:51 8 MS. KRICKL: No objection.

02:29:52 9 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

02:29:53 10 (PTX Exhibit No. 271 was admitted into  
02:29:53 11 evidence.)

02:29:54 12 BY MR. CARSTEN:

02:29:54 13 Q. So can you describe, similar to what you just did  
02:29:56 14 with Telko with respect to Labiris, what did that help a  
02:30:01 15 person of ordinary skill in the art do in terms of  
02:30:04 16 understanding how to develop a dry-powder formulation as of  
02:30:07 17 2006?

02:30:09 18 A. This publication had reasonable descriptions of the  
02:30:14 19 available dry-powder inhaler technology at the time. And  
02:30:18 20 again, reiterated or repeated some of the information in the  
02:30:22 21 Telko and Hickey publication in terms of methods of  
02:30:26 22 manufacture and testing.

02:30:30 23 Q. Now, let's go back to the '793 patent, if we could.  
02:30:42 24 Did you prepare any opinions pertaining to written  
02:30:45 25 description in this case?

Clark - Direct

02:30:46 1 A. Yes.

02:30:47 2 Q. And what legal standard did you apply for your  
02:30:50 3 written description analysis here?

02:30:52 4 A. Whether a POSA at the time is -- could read the  
02:30:58 5 specification, the claims in the patent, and understand that  
02:31:01 6 the inventors were in possession of the invention.

02:31:06 7 Q. What claims did you consider in connection with your  
02:31:09 8 work in the case?

02:31:10 9 A. 1, 4, 6, 7, 8.

02:31:18 10 Q. Now, you heard -- you were in Court when Dr. Gonda  
02:31:21 11 testified; right?

02:31:21 12 A. I was, yes.

02:31:22 13 Q. You heard his opinions pertaining to written  
02:31:24 14 description?

02:31:24 15 A. Yes.

02:31:24 16 Q. Do you agree with them?

02:31:25 17 A. No.

02:31:26 18 Q. Why not?

02:31:26 19 A. My reading of the patent is that the inventors  
02:31:33 20 actually performed what's given as Example 1 and Example 2,  
02:31:36 21 but Example 2 actually has more than one set of clinical  
02:31:40 22 data in it, but what the inventors were trying to show was  
02:31:43 23 that you could essentially reduce the time and deliver a  
02:31:47 24 bolus of Treprostinil, still get efficacy, and not generate  
02:31:52 25 any tolerability issues. So in that sense, they were in

Clark - Direct

02:31:55 1 possession of the demonstration that you could deliver a  
02:31:58 2 bolus of Treprostinil. They further went on to give some  
02:32:01 3 examples of how you would do that. The recipe is one of  
02:32:06 4 small mist inhaler is what was used in one of the examples.  
02:32:09 5 They also mentioned pressurized metered dose and, that is,  
02:32:13 6 of course, dry-powder.

02:32:15 7 Q. And those two example, those were liquid  
02:32:17 8 formulations; right?

02:32:17 9 A. That is correct.

02:32:18 10 Q. How does that help a person of skill person of skill  
02:32:21 11 in the art who's been directed to make a dry-powder  
02:32:22 12 formulation?

02:32:23 13 A. Essentially, what was specified is the dose and the  
02:32:27 14 time which -- over which you would deliver it.

02:32:30 15 Q. And why is that relevant?

02:32:31 16 A. That's generally the starting point for developing a  
02:32:36 17 powder formulation. You need to know the dose, and, of  
02:32:38 18 course, in this particular case, you need to know that it's  
02:32:40 19 safe to deliver it in a single bolus, which is what a  
02:32:45 20 dry-powder inhaler would do.

02:32:46 21 Q. I thought Dr. Gonda said you have to start with a  
02:32:48 22 whole bunch of pre-clinical stuff before you can even start  
02:32:52 23 to think about preparing a dry-powder inhalation  
02:32:55 24 formulation; is that right?

02:32:56 25 A. It's semi-right. I just question a whole bunch of

Clark - Direct

02:33:03 1 stuff that you just stated.

02:33:06 2 Generally, the patent is Treprostinil  
02:33:09 3 pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof and derivatives  
02:33:12 4 thereof. And a POSA at the time of the patent would have  
02:33:16 5 had access to preformulation laboratory where that sort of  
02:33:21 6 screenings were advised on which was the best salt form or  
02:33:25 7 crystalline form of the polymorph was available to the  
02:33:28 8 formulator.

02:33:28 9 Q. Okay. Let's get back to written description. Is  
02:33:31 10 there anything in the patent aside from the claims that  
02:33:35 11 actually tells a person of skill in the art that we're  
02:33:38 12 interested in a dry-powder?

02:33:40 13 A. Yeah, there's a statement about a dry-powder inhaler  
02:33:43 14 with a dry-powder formulation consisting of particles less  
02:33:47 15 than five microns.

02:33:50 16 Q. If I could have PDX 10.6, please. And where is this  
02:33:58 17 from?

02:33:58 18 A. Let me find it. The statement on the right is from  
02:34:10 19 within the specification on the patent, and the statement on  
02:34:13 20 the left, number four, is actually one of the claims.

02:34:20 21 Q. Now, there isn't, you'd agree, a specific operational  
02:34:26 22 detailed example in the patent specification of a dry-powder  
02:34:31 23 formulation, is there?

02:34:32 24 A. Correct. There isn't.

02:34:34 25 Q. Is that relevant to your analysis here in terms of

Clark - Direct

02:34:37 1 written description?

02:34:38 2 A. No, I -- it was -- I was essentially instructed by  
02:34:42 3 counsel that that was not required.

02:34:44 4 Q. What was not required?

02:34:44 5 A. What you've just stated in terms of there is no  
02:34:48 6 example of a particular formulation in the patent.

02:34:56 7 Q. Based upon the presence of the two examples you  
02:34:59 8 talked about, Examples 1 and 2, the disclosure at Column 7,  
02:35:06 9 how strong is your confidence that a person of skill in the  
02:35:09 10 art reading this as of 2006 would have understood that the  
02:35:13 11 inventors had possession of a dry-powder formulation of  
02:35:16 12 Treprostinil that met the claims that you considered?

02:35:19 13 A. I have no doubt that they would have understood it.

02:35:33 14 Q. Now, there was some -- we've been talking about the  
02:35:39 15 formulation. Claim 4 says dry-powder inhaler. That's not  
02:35:45 16 the formulation, is it?

02:35:46 17 A. Correct.

02:35:48 18 Q. What is a dry-powder inhaler?

02:35:50 19 A. It's a device you would put the drug or blend or  
02:35:54 20 formulation into that the patient would then use to inhale  
02:35:58 21 from. In other words, it's the delivery mode.

02:36:02 22 Q. And the patent also discloses dry-powder inhalers?

02:36:05 23 A. It does.

02:36:06 24 Q. And what dry-powder inhalers would a person of skill  
02:36:09 25 in the art have understood existed as of 2006?



Clark - Direct

02:36:11 1 A. There were numerous examples of commercial products.  
02:36:20 2 There were numerous examples of products that were in  
02:36:23 3 development.

02:36:26 4 Q. Now, we went through a list of some of them with  
02:36:29 5 Dr. Gonda. It was Exubera device and so forth. Do you  
02:36:34 6 remember that?

02:36:34 7 A. Yes, I was part of the development of Exubera.

02:36:37 8 Q. With respect to Dr. Gonda's testimony earlier, he  
02:36:41 9 suggested or at least presented as if you're starting with  
02:36:45 10 selecting a dry-powder inhaler, the device, and then you  
02:36:48 11 create the formulation for it. Was that the way that things  
02:36:50 12 worked?

02:36:51 13 A. Not strictly true. You would manufacture blends and  
02:36:57 14 most likely take an inhaler that was available at the time,  
02:37:00 15 rather than actually kind of physically choosing it for a  
02:37:12 16 patient population.

02:37:12 17 Q. With respect to the claims, the claims that you  
02:37:15 18 considered, you're confident that a person of skill in the  
02:37:19 19 art would have understood these inventors possessed these  
02:37:23 20 inventions as of 2006; is that right?

02:37:25 21 A. Yes.

02:37:28 22 Q. Now, let's switch gears a little bit to enablement.  
02:37:34 23 Did you prepare any opinions concerning enablement,  
02:37:37 24 Dr. Clark?

02:37:37 25 A. Yes.

Clark - Direct

02:37:38 1 Q. And what was the legal standard that you applied  
02:37:40 2 there?

02:37:40 3 A. That there was sufficient description in the  
02:37:45 4 specification of the patent for a POSA in 2006 to take that  
02:37:50 5 information and develop the formulation or the product.

02:37:55 6 Q. Is -- and was what's your opinion pertaining to  
02:38:02 7 enablement?

02:38:02 8 A. I think given what's specified, a POSA at the time  
02:38:09 9 would have been able to take that information about  
02:38:12 10 Treprostinil and salts thereof, about the dose, and about  
02:38:17 11 being a dry-powder of a specific size and develop an example  
02:38:22 12 of the dry-powder formulation inhaler combination.

02:38:26 13 Q. Now, Dr. Gonda talked a lot this morning about undue  
02:38:30 14 experimentation, that phrase. Do you remember him saying  
02:38:30 15 that?

02:38:34 16 A. I do, yes.

02:38:34 17 Q. What's your understanding of the phrase "undue  
02:38:37 18 experimentation"? What does that mean?

02:38:38 19 A. So, the first thing I would say is I wouldn't decry  
02:38:44 20 that there's a reasonable amount of work involved in terms  
02:38:47 21 of developing one of these formulations. And we can talk  
02:38:51 22 about that in a few minutes. But by 2006, the processes and  
02:38:58 23 the issues around developing dry-powder inhalers were  
02:39:01 24 actually well known, and the process of developing  
02:39:03 25 formulation usually used pretty routine techniques, both in

Clark - Direct

02:39:08 1 terms of analysis and in terms of manufacturing.

02:39:12 2 Q. What is your understanding, for purposes of  
02:39:16 3 enablement, about whether a patent has to include things  
02:39:21 4 that a person of ordinary skill in the art would know about  
02:39:24 5 the field of invention?

02:39:24 6 A. As far as I am aware, instructed by counsel, that's  
02:39:29 7 not necessary.

02:39:30 8 Q. Now, Dr. Gonda started with the particular inhalers.  
02:39:38 9 He had the four categories of inhalers. Would a person of  
02:39:43 10 skill in the art have had any difficulty as of 2006 choosing  
02:39:46 11 a dry-powder inhaler?

02:39:47 12 A. I don't believe so. There were fairly good examples  
02:39:53 13 and fairly accessible examples of dry-powder inhalers that  
02:39:57 14 could be used.

02:39:57 15 Q. Okay. Did you prepare a demonstrative to explain the  
02:40:00 16 steps that are involved in preparing a dry-powder?

02:40:03 17 A. Yes, I did.

02:40:05 18 Q. Can we have PDX 10.8, please. All right.

02:40:11 19 So, Dr. Clark, would you please just step  
02:40:15 20 through this process briefly for the Court.

02:40:17 21 A. Yes. So Step 1 would be selecting an API. Now,  
02:40:23 22 because in terms of the pharmaceutical, could be doing  
02:40:28 23 research selecting the API, yes, it's for medical chemists.  
02:40:31 24 In the case of the '793 patent, we're already told that API  
02:40:35 25 is Treprostinil. As part of selecting the API, there's also

Clark - Direct

02:40:41 1 select, of course, selecting the salt thereof and, if  
02:40:44 2 necessary, the polymorph, and that would be a standard  
02:40:47 3 screening exercise in nearly every pharmaceutical company I  
02:40:51 4 ever worked for.

02:40:53 5 Having chosen the API, we had a discussion about  
02:40:56 6 manufacturing of Treprostinil. Generally, the last stage of  
02:40:59 7 API manufacturing is the crystallization. At  
02:41:02 8 crystallization, usually makes material that is too large to  
02:41:07 9 be considered for delivering to the airways. In other  
02:41:10 10 words, it would get stuck in the mouth. It wouldn't get  
02:41:12 11 into the lungs. So the second step is actually size  
02:41:15 12 reduction. And the classic way of doing that, which has  
02:41:20 13 been around since before I joined the industry, is jet  
02:41:25 14 milling. And jet milling is used because it uses air jets  
02:41:29 15 and the comminution or reduction in size is actually  
02:41:32 16 generated by the air jets making the crystals impact with  
02:41:37 17 each other, rather than having a hammer or a pin or, you  
02:41:41 18 know, like a kitchen weapon. So it's much preferred because  
02:41:45 19 it -- it -- it is very unlikely it will introduce any  
02:41:49 20 impurities or metals from the micronizing jet milling, et  
02:41:53 21 cetera.

02:41:54 22 Having jet milled it, the next step is to check,  
02:41:56 23 of course, that you've got the size reduction; right? And  
02:41:59 24 that it's sufficiently small to be considered in that  
02:42:03 25 respiratory range of less than 5 microns or so.

Clark - Direct

02:42:06 1           The next step is then to blend with the carrier,  
02:42:08 2           and I think Dr. Gonda actually summarized it quite well this  
02:42:11 3           morning that these sorts of doses of micrograms -- actually  
02:42:15 4           putting micrograms of material into an inhaler and expecting  
02:42:19 5           it to come out of the inhaler is -- is really a bit of an  
02:42:24 6           over-expectation. You have to bulk it in some way. And  
02:42:27 7           it's for two reasons. One is so that it will flow and come  
02:42:30 8           out of the inhaler, and the other is you have to actually  
02:42:32 9           put it into a container in the inhaler. 12 micrograms in a  
02:42:38 10          gelatin or an HPLC capsule, for example, would really just  
02:42:43 11          coat the walls. So what's done is a carrier is used, and  
02:42:46 12          the Treprostinil is actually blended and mixed with the  
02:42:49 13          carrier and it adheres to the carrier surface.

02:42:52 14                I guess two things. Gets you bulk so that you  
02:42:55 15                can actually dispense it, and it gets you a powder that will  
02:42:59 16                actually flow reasonably well so that when the patient  
02:43:02 17                inhales, the powder will flow and it will come out with the  
02:43:06 18                inhaler into the patient as a delivered dose.

02:43:09 19                Then the final part, of course, is to put it  
02:43:12 20                together with an inhaler. Typically, as this graphic shows  
02:43:17 21                at the bottom, the most common one these days used by lots  
02:43:21 22                of people is the Plastiapae device. Uses a capsule with a  
02:43:24 23                blend in. The patient pierces it and inhales and the active  
02:43:30 24                inhalation actually fluidizes the pathway in the capsule and  
02:43:33 25                the aerosol gets delivered to the mouthpiece. At that

Clark - Direct

02:43:36 1 point, you need to check that you've got the air the  
02:43:40 2 required delivered dose and that the aerosol is of  
02:43:43 3 reasonable quality to be able to get into the lungs anyways.

02:43:47 4 Q. Thank you. We'll step through each of those briefly.  
02:43:50 5 But in terms of selecting the API, was that the pre-clinical  
02:43:54 6 kind of step that Dr. Gonda was talking about?

02:43:57 7 A. Yes. Because in this case, we wouldn't be selecting  
02:44:01 8 API. What we would be doing would be selecting the  
02:44:03 9 particular form of the API, which is Treprostinil.

02:44:07 10 Q. And if you wanted to do salt selection, are there  
02:44:10 11 labs that can do screening of salts for suitable  
02:44:13 12 characteristics?

02:44:14 13 A. Major pharmaceutical companies do that very routinely  
02:44:17 14 for almost every NC that they ever manufacture.

02:44:21 15 Q. Is it standard practice to actually do salt screens  
02:44:23 16 and polymorph testing?

02:44:27 17 A. Yes. I would consider that relative -- I mean,  
02:44:30 18 relative -- it's routine within pharmaceutical companies.

02:44:33 19 Q. Routine as of 2006?

02:44:34 20 A. Absolutely. Routine for the last four decades that  
02:44:37 21 I've been involved.

02:44:39 22 Q. So, let's go to the next demonstrative, if we could,  
02:44:44 23 PDX 10.9, Step 1 selection of API. For a person of skill in  
02:44:49 24 the art looking at the claim, what would they have to do in  
02:44:53 25 order to move forward with the selection of API?

Clark - Direct

02:44:56 1 A. They would take a look at Treprostinil and the salts  
02:45:02 2 and derivatives thereof. Now, at the time of the 2006  
02:45:06 3 patent, there was a previous patent by Phares that actually  
02:45:10 4 describes some of the salts and some of their salts  
02:45:13 5 characteristics, which is where a POSA would start.

02:45:17 6 Q. And now, let's turn to Step 2. Once you've gotten  
02:45:26 7 the particular active and salt form that you're going to  
02:45:30 8 proceed with, what's the next step?

02:45:32 9 A. Size reduction. Because invariably the  
02:45:36 10 crystallization that creates the active solid makes it too  
02:45:42 11 big to be used directly in the formulation, so it needs to  
02:45:48 12 be micronized. This is a graphic of a micronized polymer.

02:45:52 13 Q. Did Dr. Gonda talk at all about the jet milling or  
02:45:55 14 any complexities with respect to jet milling?

02:45:58 15 A. I believe he talked somewhat about having a high  
02:46:04 16 enough melting point that the micronizing wouldn't melt or  
02:46:08 17 create issues with a amorphous content or whatever in micron  
02:46:12 18 material.

02:46:19 19 Q. Is jet milling, as of 2006, is that routine?

02:46:22 20 A. It has been routine for decades before 2006.

02:46:26 21 Q. Once you've got -- is there anything you need to do  
02:46:39 22 after you build the particles to assess whether they're the  
02:46:42 23 right size?

02:46:43 24 A. Yeah, you have to measure the size.

02:46:45 25 Q. How do you do that?

Clark - Direct

02:46:46 1 A. Typically these days, that's done by laser  
02:46:49 2 diffraction, which was also around in 2006. This -- you  
02:46:55 3 suspend the material in some non-solvent, shine the laser  
02:46:59 4 beam through it and the diffraction pattern is indicative of  
02:47:02 5 the size of the material that's suspended.

02:47:04 6 Q. What does the patent teach you about what the right  
02:47:07 7 size of these particles out to be?

02:47:09 8 A. It's less than ten and specifically less than five.

02:47:12 9 Q. Was that pretty commonly understood as of the  
02:47:14 10 priority date 2006?

02:47:15 11 A. Yes.

02:47:19 12 Q. Once you've gotten the particles the right size,  
02:47:21 13 what's next step?

02:47:22 14 A. Blending with a carrier. So to bulk the material up  
02:47:26 15 so that, A, you can fill it into a capsule or an inhaler  
02:47:30 16 and, B, to get a powder that will actually fluidize and flow  
02:47:35 17 appropriately when the patient inhales from the device or  
02:47:39 18 when the device actually actuates, if it's not passive  
02:47:42 19 inhaler.

02:47:43 20 Q. And now there's -- there's an images at the bottom  
02:47:46 21 here of sheer -- high-sheer blending and low-sheer blending.  
02:47:49 22 What is that?

02:47:50 23 A. Those are two forms of blending that actually  
02:47:54 24 occurred used now currently used back in 2006. The one on  
02:47:58 25 the left, probably the best analogy is the kitchen blender.



Clark - Direct

02:48:04 1 The kitchen blenders were a little bit too severe.

02:48:07 2 Essentially have a set of blades within the powder that

02:48:10 3 rotates and mixes the powder. Maybe a kitchen mixer is a

02:48:13 4 better way of saying it.

02:48:14 5 The low-shear on the left is actually tumbled

02:48:17 6 with the blend or the lactose and the active into a

02:48:21 7 container and the container is tumbled. Back in the '80s,

02:48:28 8 we sometimes did that by making a nice jar of water and

02:48:30 9 walking around the lab, or although now machines would have

02:48:35 10 been around for again decades. And would actually do that

02:48:38 11 for you automatically.

02:48:38 12 Q. Now, you've shown lactose at the top of this screen

02:48:41 13 as the carrier here. Why did you select lactose?

02:48:43 14 A. Lactose, at the time in 2006, was the only approved

02:48:48 15 carrier in the U.S.

02:48:49 16 Q. Now, Dr. Gonda talked about concerns about proceeding

02:48:54 17 with lactose with any compound or salt that contained an

02:48:59 18 amine moiety. Is that was that a legitimate concern?

02:49:03 19 A. It's a legitimate concern in terms of paying

02:49:07 20 attention, but I believe there were numerous inhaler

02:49:12 21 products with amines and I think there were probably 70 or

02:49:17 22 so pharmaceutical products with amines that have actually

02:49:21 23 been formulated with lactose.

02:49:22 24 Q. What would you do if you were concerned about the

02:49:26 25 Maillard reaction? Would you just stop and say I'm not

Clark - Direct

02:49:27 1 going to develop a formulation?

02:49:28 2 A. No, we'd try it and see what happens.

02:49:31 3 Q. Okay.

02:49:31 4 A. A bit like the DNase particle we were talking about  
02:49:35 5 this morning.

02:49:37 6 Q. That's right. You -- I had mentioned the DNase  
02:49:38 7 product with Dr. Gonda. You were on that too?

02:49:40 8 A. Absolutely.

02:49:41 9 Q. And when was that product developed?

02:49:42 10 A. Early '90s.

02:49:46 11 Q. And how long were you working on than that with  
02:49:48 12 Dr. Gonda?

02:49:48 13 A. Three years. Not specifically on the powder because  
02:49:52 14 we were also finishing off getting the nebulizer product  
02:49:56 15 approved by FDA, and the powder was going to be a follow-on  
02:49:59 16 product. It would have been more convenient for patients.

02:50:02 17 Q. So once you've actually made this blended powder,  
02:50:06 18 what do you do with it? Do you have to test it?

02:50:08 19 A. Yes, and you would put it in into the capsules or the  
02:50:12 20 containers for the inhaler. And this is a graphic of an  
02:50:17 21 instrument called a cascading impactor. These have been  
02:50:19 22 used in the industry -- I guess since I joined the industry  
02:50:23 23 back in the '80s. Different designs, but essentially the  
02:50:28 24 same principles. The aerosol is drawn out through the  
02:50:31 25 inhaler, so the -- fluidizes in the capsule container. The

Clark - Direct

02:50:36 1 drug gets drawn out through the container. And the cascade  
02:50:39 2 impactor actually separates the aerosol out into different  
02:50:44 3 aerodynamic size fractions. With aerodynamic size being the  
02:50:47 4 important determiner to where it would head in the air.  
02:50:52 5 Course at one end and the fractions just get finer and  
02:50:54 6 finer. And what we're looking for here is the quality of  
02:50:56 7 that aerosol, i.e., that there's sufficient aerosol less  
02:51:00 8 than five microns could be able to get into the airways.

02:51:05 9 Q. Now, so, and at this point, you have some  
02:51:09 10 understanding as to whether you had a successful dry-powder  
02:51:13 11 formulation sufficient to carry forward?

02:51:14 12 A. Correct. Or an understanding that you need to tune  
02:51:18 13 the binding or change the lactose carrier size which would  
02:51:22 14 all be kind of routine optimization.

02:51:25 15 Q. So, soup to nuts from selection of the API to going  
02:51:32 16 through the cascade impactor or getting sufficient testing  
02:51:35 17 to have an idea as to whether you had something that was  
02:51:38 18 worth carrying forward, how long do you think that would  
02:51:40 19 have taken a person of ordinary skill in the art as of 2006?

02:51:44 20 A. So a starting point of knowing the API, way before  
02:51:49 21 back in the '80s. Dr. Russo would have compound. Took me  
02:51:54 22 about six weeks to develop a manufacturing process and it  
02:51:58 23 probably would have been acceptable to take into clinical  
02:52:01 24 manufacturing so that you could have manufactured it and  
02:52:03 25 used it in humans. So that's six weeks to maybe two months

Clark - Cross

02:52:08 1 to get a reasonable confidence that you've got a process and  
02:52:11 2 a product that would then, of course, require the reasonable  
02:52:14 3 amount of work, but routine work, to get to a product that  
02:52:17 4 you would be able to put into people.

02:52:25 5 Q. Would a person of ordinary skill in the art consider  
02:52:27 6 six to eight weeks of development undue experimentation?

02:52:30 7 A. No.

02:52:33 8 Q. And with all this information and these opinions,  
02:52:37 9 what is -- what's your opinion about the -- whether the '793  
02:52:41 10 patent and the disclosure enables a person of skill in the  
02:52:44 11 art to practice the -- each and every one of the asserted  
02:52:46 12 claims in this case?

02:52:47 13 A. I believe it does.

02:52:49 14 Q. Any doubt in your mind on that?

02:52:50 15 A. No.

02:52:51 16 MR. CARSTEN: Pass the witness.

02:52:53 17 THE COURT: All right. Cross-examination.

02:52:53 18 CROSS-EXAMINATION

02:52:56 19 BY MS. KRICKL:

02:52:56 20 Q. Hello there, Dr. Clark. Good to see you again. You  
02:52:59 21 may not recall, but my name is Lauren Krickl.

02:53:02 22 Dr. Clark, do you agree that the '793 patent  
02:53:06 23 does not disclose any method for making a powder formulation  
02:53:08 24 of Treprostinil?

02:53:09 25 A. Yes.

Clark - Cross

02:53:13 1 Q. And you just testified on direct examination that a  
02:53:17 2 POSA could have developed a dry-powder formulation of  
02:53:20 3 Treprostinil using routine techniques in 2006; right?

02:53:23 4 A. Yes.

02:53:25 5 Q. 2006 was 16 years ago; right?

02:53:27 6 A. Yes.

02:53:30 7 Q. Yet, you understand that even as of today, 16 years  
02:53:33 8 later, UTC does not have an FDA-approved dry-powder and any  
02:53:38 9 other product on the market, does it?

02:53:39 10 A. It doesn't.

02:53:41 11 Q. To your knowledge, no company has ever sold a powder  
02:53:44 12 formulation of Treprostinil; right?

02:53:45 13 A. As far as I know, yes.

02:53:48 14 Q. You understand that the '793 patent only has two  
02:53:52 15 examples; right?

02:53:53 16 A. No, you will have to clarify that.

02:53:59 17 Q. I believe you testified on direct examination that  
02:54:01 18 the '793 patent has two examples.

02:54:03 19 A. Oh, wording of DPI formulations in the patent, yes.

02:54:07 20 Q. Sorry. Can you repeat that.

02:54:09 21 A. The wording in the patent --

02:54:10 22 Q. Yeah. Within the patent?

02:54:12 23 A. -- specifying dry-powder remains in formulations.

02:54:16 24 Q. Sorry. Can you repeat that again.

02:54:18 25 A. Yeah. So within the patent, it is mentioned twice.

## Clark - Cross

02:54:22 1 Q. Okay. My question was a little different. I'm  
02:54:27 2 asking if you understand that -- whether the '793 patent has  
02:54:30 3 two examples.

02:54:32 4 A. Yes, the two examples are the Respimat and the  
02:54:46 5 Optineb which was used in post delivery medicine.

02:54:49 6 Sorry a little bit of an accent.

02:54:52 7 Q. And those two examples describe liquid formulations  
02:54:56 8 of Treprostinil; right?

02:54:57 9 A. Correct.

02:54:59 10 Q. And you also testified today that the patent does not  
02:55:04 11 close -- not disclose that a powder formulation was actually  
02:55:07 12 made; right?

02:55:08 13 A. Correct.

02:55:10 14 Q. You mentioned that Treprostinil powder has a carrier  
02:55:13 15 material; right?

02:55:14 16 A. The most logical way of formulating into in 2006  
02:55:19 17 would have been with a carrier. There were alternatives in  
02:55:23 18 2006, but they were more earlier in development. Let's put  
02:55:28 19 it that way.

02:55:30 20 Q. Let's take a look at JTX 003, the '793 patent.

02:55:35 21 A. In the binder, yeah.

02:55:37 22 Q. And turn to Claim 1. And it will be on the screen as  
02:55:41 23 well, Dr. Clark.

02:55:43 24 A. Okay.

02:55:51 25 Q. The claim is not limited to any specific excipient

02:55:54 1 carrier material, is it?

02:55:55 2 A. No.

02:55:58 3 Q. The claims are not limited to a specific dry-powder  
02:56:02 4 formulation; right?

02:56:02 5 A. No.

02:56:05 6 Q. It can be any dry-powder formulation; right?

02:56:07 7 A. Yes.

02:56:12 8 Q. Dr. Clark, you've never developed a dry-powder  
02:56:14 9 formulation of Treprostinil; right?

02:56:16 10 A. Correct.

02:56:18 11 Q. You published papers that discuss the use of medical  
02:56:21 12 inhalers; right?

02:56:22 13 A. And formulation development and interaction with  
02:56:26 14 patients and clinical trials, et cetera, et cetera.

02:56:29 15 Q. In general, when designing medical inhalers, you'd  
02:56:32 16 agree that problems can arise if the drug and excipient are  
02:56:36 17 not chemically compatible; right?

02:56:38 18 A. It would be very unusual to see a chemical  
02:56:43 19 incompatibility between the formulation and the device.

02:56:47 20 Q. I apologize can you repeat that again.

02:56:49 21 A. Said it would be very unusual to see a chemical  
02:56:52 22 incompatibility between a formulation and a device.

02:56:57 23 Q. You heard Dr. Gonda testify earlier; right?

02:56:59 24 A. I did, yes.

02:57:01 25 Q. He talked about a paper you published in 1995 called

02:57:05 1 Medical Aerosol Inhalers Past, Present, and Future?

02:57:08 2 A. Yes.

02:57:11 3 Q. Let's look at DTX 268 on the screen, please. And  
02:57:17 4 this is that paper; right?

02:57:18 5 A. Yes, it looks like it is.

02:57:21 6 Q. Let's turn to Page 2. And do you see the paragraph  
02:57:26 7 starting with however?

02:57:28 8 A. Yeah, if you -- you -- you're going to blow it up,  
02:57:31 9 I'll read it. Yeah. Okay.

02:57:35 10 Q. And on -- do you see the last sentence of the  
02:57:37 11 paragraph says, "In this respect, problems can arise if the  
02:57:40 12 drug substance and/or excipients are not suitably isolated  
02:57:43 13 from the external environment or if the drug and excipient  
02:57:47 14 are not chemically compatible"; right?

02:57:49 15 A. Right. Yes. True statement.

02:57:52 16 Q. This was true in 1995, the dates of this paper?

02:57:58 17 A. Oh, yeah. For sure. It's still true now.

02:58:01 18 Q. And it was true in 2006?

02:58:02 19 A. Yes.

02:58:06 20 Q. Dr. Clark, before 2021, there were no reported  
02:58:09 21 inhalation profiles to support the use of DPI in patients  
02:58:13 22 with PAH; correct?

02:58:15 23 A. When I testified at my deposition, I believed that to  
02:58:21 24 be the case. I've since seen or become aware of a paper in  
02:58:26 25 2005 that details the pressures that PAH can form when they



## Clark - Redirect

02:58:33 1 make extreme effort.

02:58:42 2 MS. KRICKL: No further questions.

02:58:43 3 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

02:58:52 4 MR. CARSTEN: Just a moment, Your Honor.

02:58:53 5 THE COURT: Sure.

02:59:26 6 MR. CARSTEN: May I proceed, Your Honor?

02:59:27 7 THE COURT: Yeah.

02:59:28 8 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you.

02:59:40 9 MR. SUKDUANG: Can we see it first, Mr. Carsten?

02:59:42 10 MR. CARSTEN: Yeah, they're getting a copy right  
02:59:44 11 now. May I proceed? Thank you.

02:59:57 12 CROSS-EXAMINATION

02:59:57 13 MR. CARSTEN:

02:59:57 14 Q. Dr. Clark, on your cross-examination, you were asked  
03:00:01 15 about whether you were aware of a paper that allowed you to  
03:00:07 16 conclude something about the inspiratory pull of pulmonary  
03:00:14 17 hypertension patients?

03:00:14 18 A. I was, yes.

03:00:15 19 Q. What was that article that you found?

03:00:16 20 A. An article by Meyer, et al.

03:00:20 21 Q. I'm putting up on the screen --

03:00:20 22 A. Sorry. Yeah. I'll lean forward a little bit  
03:00:24 23 apologies. I'm getting too relaxed.

03:00:27 24 Q. You're also feeding us back.

03:00:29 25 A. Yeah. Okay. Sit back a little bit.

## Clark - Redirect

03:00:32 1 Q. Putting up on the screen what's been marked as PTX  
03:00:36 2 1980. Does this look familiar to you?  
03:00:37 3 A. Yes, it does.  
03:00:38 4 Q. Is this the paper that you were referring to?  
03:00:40 5 A. Yes, it is. I became aware of this after my original  
03:00:44 6 deposition.  
03:00:45 7 Q. Okay. And just in very broad terms, what does this  
03:00:49 8 paper, as of the priority date, tell a person of ordinary  
03:00:54 9 skill in the art about the inspiratory pull pressure of  
03:00:57 10 those suffering from pulmonary arterial hypertension?  
03:01:00 11 A. I believe the numbers in here were something like  
03:01:04 12 five KPA for females and 6.2 KPA for males.  
03:01:11 13 Q. I'm going to zoom in on the abstract here.  
03:01:14 14 A. Yes, please.  
03:01:15 15 Q. Maybe we all can read it without glasses.  
03:01:20 16 And --  
03:01:22 17 A. Actually 5.3 and 6.8.  
03:01:25 18 Q. You're one step ahead of me, Dr. Clark.  
03:01:29 19 I'm going to highlight a sentence there from the  
03:01:32 20 abstract. I may have gone over -- I may have overshoot.  
03:01:36 21 Would you explain to the Court -- would you read  
03:01:38 22 that sentence into the record and then would you tell the  
03:01:41 23 Court what that's saying?  
03:01:42 24 A. Maximum inspiratory pressure was lower in the female  
03:01:45 25 patients than in 20 controls, 5.2 versus 8.2. In male

03:01:50 1 patients, PI max was lower than in 25 controls, 6.8 versus  
03:01:56 2 10.5.

03:01:58 3 Q. Okay. Now, what is this -- how would a person of  
03:02:02 4 skill in the art consider these maximal inspiratory pressure  
03:02:05 5 numbers?

03:02:06 6 A. So, in -- sorry. In line a little bit with what  
03:02:10 7 Dr. Gonda was saying this morning, generally lung disease in  
03:02:15 8 itself does not determine what pressures patients PDCF or PH  
03:02:21 9 patients can actually manage to exert, how strong their  
03:02:26 10 respiratory muscles are. And what this is a measure of is  
03:02:29 11 that respiratory muscle strength and its ability to pull a  
03:02:34 12 pressure the way these tests usually do is against a hollow  
03:02:40 13 or dead stock, but it tells one skilled in the art what  
03:02:43 14 pressure these patients should be able to pull on the end of  
03:02:47 15 a dry-powder inhaler.

03:02:48 16 Q. And how do these numbers compare to the numbers that  
03:02:52 17 Dr. Gonda presented earlier pertaining to inspiratory  
03:02:56 18 pressures of those separate proponent hypertension which  
03:02:59 19 came years after the priority date here?

03:03:01 20 A. They are much higher.

03:03:03 21 MR. CARSTEN: Your Honor, I'd offer PTX 1980  
03:03:07 22 into evidence.

03:03:10 23 MS. KRICKL: Objection.

03:03:10 24 THE COURT: What's the basis.

03:03:14 25 MS. KRICKL: He never produced and considered

## Clark - Recross

03:03:15 1 this publication.

03:03:17 2 MR. CARSTEN: They opened the door Your Honor.

03:03:18 3 THE COURT: You asked him about it on cross. If  
03:03:20 4 you didn't want him to bring it up, why did you bring it up  
03:03:22 5 on cross?

03:03:24 6 MS. KRICKL: Okay.

03:03:26 7 THE COURT: All right. So it's admitted over  
03:03:28 8 objection.

03:03:28 9 (PTX Exhibit No. 1980 was admitted into  
03:03:29 10 evidence.)

03:03:29 11 MR. CARSTEN: Thank you.

03:03:30 12 No further questions, Dr. Clark. Thank you so  
03:03:32 13 much.

03:03:33 14 THE COURT: All right. I think you're done,  
03:03:36 15 Dr. Clark. So you can step down and watch your step.

03:03:38 16 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Judge.

03:03:40 17 MS. KRICKL: Oh, we have a re-cross.

03:03:41 18 THE COURT: All right. You're not done.

03:03:41 19 RECROSS-EXAMINATION

03:03:44 20 BY MS. KRICKL:

03:03:44 21 Q. Were' going to take a look at DTX 468.

03:03:54 22 Do you recognize this paper, Dr. Clark?

03:03:56 23 A. I do. That's a paper that was recently published  
03:04:01 24 with Aaron Waxman's name on.

03:04:03 25 Q. And it's published in 2021?

## Clark - Recross

03:04:05 1 A. Yes.

03:04:07 2 Q. And this is a peer-reviewed paper; correct?

03:04:09 3 A. Correct. I assume so. It's Pulmonary Circulation,  
03:04:13 4 which has a peer-review process.

03:04:15 5 Q. And you see the first sentence says inhalation  
03:04:18 6 profiles to support the use of dry-powder inhalers for drug  
03:04:21 7 delivery in patients with pulmonary arterial hypertension  
03:04:23 8 have not been reported?

03:04:25 9 A. Yes.

03:04:28 10 MS. KRICKL: No further questions.

03:04:29 11 THE COURT: All right. I think you can step  
03:04:32 12 down now.

03:04:32 13 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

03:04:40 14 MR. JACKSON: Good afternoon, Your Honor.

03:04:43 15 Plaintiffs call Hugh Smyth to the stand. Dr. Hugh Smyth.

03:04:57 16 DEPUTY CLERK: Please state and state spell your  
03:05:00 17 full name for the record.

03:05:01 18 THE WITNESS: Hugh David Charles Smyth H-U-G-H  
03:05:05 19 space S-M-Y-T-H.

03:05:07 20 DEPUTY CLERK: Do you affirm that the testimony  
03:05:09 21 you are about to give to the Court in the case now pending  
03:05:11 22 will be the truth, the whole truth, and nothing but the  
03:05:13 23 truth, you do so affirm?

03:05:14 24 THE WITNESS: I do.

03:05:14 25 HUGH SMYTH, the witness herein, after having

Smyth - Direct

03:05:14 1 been duly sworn under oath, was examined and testified as  
03:05:14 2 follows:

03:05:17 3 DEPUTY CLERK: Doctor, just make sure you speak  
03:05:18 4 in the mike as best as you can.

03:05:27 5 MR. DYKHUIS: Your Honor, may I approach?

03:05:33 6 MR. JACKSON: May I proceed.

03:05:34 7 THE COURT: Yes.

03:05:34 8 DIRECT EXAMINATION

03:05:34 9 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:05:35 10 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. Smyth.

03:05:36 11 A. Good afternoon.

03:05:38 12 Q. Could you please introduce yourself to the Court and  
03:05:40 13 spell your name for the court reporter.

03:05:41 14 A. My name is Hugh Smyth. It's spelled H-U-G-H,  
03:05:48 15 S-M-Y-T-H, and I'm professor at University of Texas at  
03:05:50 16 Austin.

03:05:51 17 Q. And in any particular department at the University of  
03:05:55 18 Texas at Austin?

03:05:56 19 A. I'm employed in the College of Pharmacy.

03:06:00 20 Q. And what type of work or research do you focus on at  
03:06:03 21 the University of Texas?

03:06:04 22 A. My lab does drug delivery research and primarily  
03:06:09 23 focuses on inhalation aerosols, including dry-powder  
03:06:15 24 inhalers.

03:06:15 25 Q. What about your teaching responsibilities if any?

Smyth - Direct

03:06:17 1 A. I teach in the pharm D program as well as the  
03:06:21 2 graduate pharmaceutical sciences program.

03:06:24 3 Q. Okay. In your binder, do you have -- could you open  
03:06:26 4 up and look at PTX 507. And could we put that up on the  
03:06:30 5 screen, please.

03:06:33 6 Do you recognize this document?

03:06:33 7 A. Yes, this is my CV.

03:06:36 8 Q. And is it current?

03:06:37 9 A. Reasonably current, I imagine.

03:06:41 10 MR. JACKSON: Okay. Move to admit PTX 507.

03:06:43 11 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:06:45 12 (PTX Exhibit No. 507 was admitted into  
03:06:46 13 evidence.)

03:06:46 14 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:06:47 15 Q. Now, would you say -- do you have any particular area  
03:06:50 16 of expertise in terms of drug formulation or drug delivery?

03:06:54 17 A. Yes, as I mentioned, inhalation aerosols is one of  
03:06:58 18 the area that is I focus on in my research.

03:07:02 19 Q. Does that include dry-powder inhalers?

03:07:04 20 A. It does. I've worked on those for many years.

03:07:06 21 Q. Does that also include metered-dose inhalers?

03:07:09 22 A. Yes.

03:07:09 23 Q. Nasal sprays?

03:07:10 24 A. Yes.

03:07:10 25 Q. Transdermal drug delivery?

Smyth - Direct

03:07:12 1 A. It does.

03:07:13 2 Q. And formulations as well?

03:07:15 3 A. Yes, formulating all those different types of  
03:07:18 4 products.

03:07:19 5 MR. JACKSON: Your Honor, United Therapeutics  
03:07:21 6 offers Dr. Smyth as an expert in the field of inhaled drugs,  
03:07:24 7 formulations, and devices, their development, including  
03:07:28 8 dry-powder formulations and dry-powder inhalers.

03:07:31 9 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:07:31 10 THE COURT: All right. You may proceed.

03:07:33 11 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:07:34 12 Q. So, have you -- did you render -- you rendered some  
03:07:40 13 opinions in this case.

03:07:41 14 A. Yes.

03:07:41 15 Q. And have you prepared a demonstrative outlining what  
03:07:43 16 you were asked to consider?

03:07:44 17 A. Yes.

03:07:45 18 Q. So, can we take a look at that?

03:07:46 19 So, what exactly were you asked to consider?

03:07:49 20 A. I was asked to perform some testing from the point of  
03:07:56 21 view of the POSA in May of 2006 to see whether or not a  
03:08:03 22 development of a dry-powder inhaler containing Treprostinil  
03:08:11 23 could be done within the claim limitations of the '793  
03:08:18 24 patent without undue experimentation.

03:08:22 25 Q. Now, what claims did you consider when performing



03:08:25 1 your analysis?

03:08:25 2 A. Claims 1, 4, 6, and 7 and not really 8, but that goes  
03:08:41 3 in there.

03:08:41 4 Q. And what particular criteria or characteristics  
03:08:45 5 were -- or limitations were you seeking to meet in the  
03:08:49 6 test -- testing that you were performing?

03:08:50 7 A. That, first of all, a dry-powder formulation of  
03:08:54 8 Treprostinil for the use in dry-powder inhaler that could be  
03:09:00 9 dosed within the 15 to 90 micrograms range in one to three  
03:09:07 10 breaths, and I think with the powder being -- comprising  
03:09:13 11 powders less than five microns in time.

03:09:17 12 Q. Now, Dr. Smyth, were you here when Dr. Gonda provided  
03:09:19 13 an opinion with respect to the amount of experimentation  
03:09:22 14 that would be required to practice these claims?

03:09:24 15 A. Yes.

03:09:25 16 Q. And do you agree with him that it would have required  
03:09:28 17 undue experimentation to prepare a dry-powder consistent  
03:09:31 18 with these claims?

03:09:32 19 A. No, consistent with these cases.

03:09:36 20 Q. So did you agree or disagree?

03:09:38 21 A. I disagree that it would not -- it would include  
03:09:41 22 undue experimentation.

03:09:43 23 Q. And why?

03:09:44 24 A. Based on my own experimentation that I conducted over  
03:09:50 25 the course of a few weeks as well as my knowledge of

03:09:54 1 development of dry-powder inhalers.

03:09:57 2 Q. Okay. Now, you indicated that you did this from the  
03:10:01 3 perspective of a person of ordinary skill in the art; is  
03:10:05 4 that right?

03:10:05 5 A. That's correct.

03:10:06 6 Q. So, can we go to the next slide. And what did you  
03:10:09 7 define as your -- as the -- what did you use as your  
03:10:12 8 definition of a person of ordinary skill?

03:10:16 9 A. I used the definition that Drs. Waxman and Clark  
03:10:18 10 used. It's up there on the slide on the left.

03:10:21 11 Q. And could you just read what the test is.

03:10:23 12 A. It would have -- the POSA would have had a graduate  
03:10:26 13 degree in medicine or a field related to drug development  
03:10:31 14 that would have been M.D. or Ph.D. with at least two years  
03:10:35 15 of experience in either investigation or treatment of  
03:10:38 16 pulmonary hypertension or in the development of potential  
03:10:42 17 drug candidates for -- to be delivered by inhalation.

03:10:47 18 Q. Now, you're aware that Dr. Gonda has a slightly  
03:10:51 19 different formulation of the person of ordinary skill; is  
03:10:52 20 that right?

03:10:53 21 A. Yes.

03:10:53 22 Q. Would your opinion about this -- about the amount of  
03:10:56 23 experimentation required change if you were to use  
03:11:00 24 Dr. Gonda's definition?

03:11:01 25 A. No.

Smyth - Direct

03:11:03 1 Q. So, what would a person of ordinary skill in 2006,  
03:11:09 2 under either definition, know about formulating a dry-powder  
03:11:13 3 formulation with a dry-powder inhaler?

03:11:14 4 A. As Dr. Gonda and Dr. Clark mentioned, there was lots  
03:11:19 5 of references and literature and prior art available to a  
03:11:24 6 POSA about the development of dry-powder inhalers at that  
03:11:28 7 point.

03:11:29 8 Q. Now, did you review any particular documents to make  
03:11:31 9 sure you understood what a person of ordinary skill would  
03:11:35 10 know as of 2006?

03:11:36 11 A. Yeah, there was one particular reference that I  
03:11:39 12 relied on, which has been mentioned already, the Telko and  
03:11:43 13 Hickey reference.

03:11:44 14 Q. Okay. So let's pull up the PTX 905. Is this the  
03:11:49 15 Telko and Hickey reference?

03:11:50 16 A. It is.

03:11:51 17 Q. Okay.

03:11:54 18 MR. JACKSON: I believe, Your Honor, it is  
03:11:55 19 already in evidence as a result of Dr. Clark.

03:11:57 20 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:11:57 21 Q. So what would a person of ordinary skill know from  
03:12:01 22 the Telko and Hickey article?

03:12:02 23 A. We can see from this demonstrative there's, you know,  
03:12:07 24 pretty large table of contents. This review article goes  
03:12:11 25 over a lot of different aspects including, you know, the

Smyth - Direct

03:12:14 1 development of DPIs, particle sizing, formulation  
03:12:19 2 excipients, processing methods, things of that nature.

03:12:22 3 Q. Now, what did you do to assess the degree of  
03:12:27 4 experimentation that would be required as of 2006 to  
03:12:31 5 practice the claims based on the teachings of the patent?

03:12:33 6 A. I -- I did some experimentation myself in my lab.

03:12:38 7 Q. And did you prepare a demonstrative that summarizes  
03:12:41 8 those steps?

03:12:43 9 A. Yes.

03:12:43 10 Q. So can we go to that. So, can you tell me what this  
03:12:47 11 demonstrative shows.

03:12:48 12 A. This is a calendar from -- I think it's October.  
03:12:52 13 Yeah, this is October of last year starting October 20th  
03:12:57 14 when we began experiments, myself and a post-doctoral fellow  
03:13:01 15 in my lab. And I've got little icons on there that sort of  
03:13:06 16 indicate what kind of experiments were being done on what  
03:13:10 17 day of the week.

03:13:12 18 And so you can see we're doing some powder  
03:13:16 19 milling, powder blending, aerosol testing, things like  
03:13:19 20 Dr. Gonda and Dr. Clark have already talked about.

03:13:23 21 Q. Okay. So the grinding, the gear shift wheels, do you  
03:13:28 22 see those a number of places?

03:13:29 23 A. Yes.

03:13:30 24 Q. Those are powder milling, so you did that on  
03:13:33 25 October 22nd, the 26th, the 28th, the 29th and November 2nd;

03:13:37 1 correct?

03:13:38 2 A. Yes.

03:13:38 3 Q. Okay. And then the bowl stirring thing, powder  
03:13:44 4 blending, is that the mixing you mentioned?

03:13:46 5 A. That's right.

03:13:47 6 Q. Okay. And so you did that on the 26, the 3rd, and --  
03:13:50 7 26th of October, the 3rd, and 6th of November; right?

03:13:53 8 A. Yes.

03:13:54 9 Q. And then aerosol testing, that's the other icon;  
03:13:59 10 right?

03:13:59 11 A. Yes.

03:14:00 12 Q. And so you did that on the 28th of October, and the  
03:14:03 13 7th of November, and the 9th of November; is that right?

03:14:06 14 A. Yes.

03:14:11 15 Q. So, I want to take you through -- we're going to walk  
03:14:14 16 through each of those steps, the milling, the blending, and  
03:14:17 17 the aerosol testing.

03:14:19 18 Looking first at that first step, the milling or  
03:14:25 19 the grinding thing, can you -- did you prepare a  
03:14:28 20 demonstrative of what that's all about.

03:14:30 21 A. Yes, a schematic.

03:14:32 22 Q. So can we go to that.

03:14:34 23 So are these -- are these the steps you took?

03:14:37 24 A. Right. Yeah, I had three specific steps, kind of as  
03:14:42 25 Dr. Clark mentioned, milling, taking the micronized powder

03:14:47 1 of the right size, blending it with the lactose, taking that  
03:14:52 2 blended powder, putting it in a capsule, and putting that in  
03:14:56 3 an inhaler and testing the aerosol.

03:14:58 4 Q. And your testing, on the side it says three weeks in  
03:15:01 5 time. Is that how long it took?

03:15:02 6 A. Roughly.

03:15:04 7 Q. So, the micronizing by jet milling, what is that?

03:15:10 8 A. As Dr. Clark had his demonstrative, it's basically  
03:15:16 9 using a compressed gas to break up particles into smaller  
03:15:24 10 particles, which is grinding them up like a salt grinder or  
03:15:28 11 coffee grinder or something like that.

03:15:29 12 Q. And then how do you measure the particle size  
03:15:32 13 following the milling or micronization process?

03:15:35 14 A. We used laser diffraction.

03:15:37 15 Q. And how does laser diffraction work?

03:15:39 16 A. Essentially, as Andy or Dr. Clark mentioned, if you  
03:15:46 17 shine a laser through your particles, the diffraction  
03:15:50 18 patterns that result from the interaction of light with  
03:15:52 19 particles can be converted back into a particle size  
03:15:57 20 distribution. And it allows you to figure out how much size  
03:16:01 21 of your particles you have.

03:16:03 22 Q. So, once you have the micronized particles that  
03:16:05 23 you've measured the size of, what did you do next?

03:16:08 24 A. So, then we did that Step 2, which was blending of  
03:16:16 25 the micronized material, Treprostinil, with lactose.

Smyth - Direct

03:16:20 1 Q. And why did you choose lactose?

03:16:22 2 A. Again, from a perspective of a POSA from 2006, this  
03:16:27 3 was the most common excipient for use in dry-powder  
03:16:32 4 inhalers.

03:16:33 5 Q. Okay. So, let me -- let's -- can I pull up PTX 47,  
03:16:38 6 please.

03:16:38 7 Do you recognize this document?

03:16:45 8 A. Yes.

03:16:48 9 Q. And what is it?

03:16:49 10 A. It's a research article on -- focused on Maillard  
03:16:58 11 reaction.

03:16:58 12 MR. JACKSON: Move to admit PTX 47.

03:17:00 13 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:17:01 14 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:17:03 15 (PTX Exhibit No. 47 was admitted into evidence.)

03:17:03 16 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:17:03 17 Q. Okay. So can we go to the second page of this and  
03:17:06 18 look at the first full paragraph.

03:17:08 19 Sorry. First full paragraph on the right-hand  
03:17:12 20 side. Okay. So can you read that first sentence?

03:17:20 21 A. "Although the Maillard reaction is a widely  
03:17:24 22 recognized drug-excipient interaction, lactose, the reducing  
03:17:29 23 sugar used most widely as an excipient, is frequently used  
03:17:33 24 to formulate amine drugs."

03:17:35 25 Q. And then can you read the next sentence, please.

03:17:37 1 A. The database of Physicians Desk Reference gives 72  
03:17:40 2 entries in which amine drugs are formulated with lactose.

03:17:44 3 Q. So, that's -- that's an article that describes 72  
03:17:48 4 entries in which amine drugs are formulated with lactose; is  
03:17:52 5 that right?

03:17:52 6 A. Yeah, and the Physicians Desk Reference is generally  
03:17:56 7 those products which were approved.

03:17:59 8 Q. Okay. So now let's go back to your testing process.  
03:18:03 9 Did you prepare a demonstrative to show how you blended the  
03:18:06 10 Treprostinil and lactose?

03:18:07 11 A. Yes.

03:18:08 12 Q. All right. So let's go to that. So, actually, let's  
03:18:12 13 go back one just for a second. Can you tell me what this  
03:18:15 14 jet mill -- air jet mill thing is?

03:18:17 15 A. This is just a -- you know cartoon showing big  
03:18:20 16 particles going into the jet mill, and after one cycle, you  
03:18:24 17 get reduction of the particle size.

03:18:27 18 Q. So they bounce around in side the jet mill and then  
03:18:30 19 pop out?

03:18:30 20 A. They go around at high speeds colliding with each  
03:18:34 21 other and with the walls of the mill.

03:18:36 22 Q. And then after you have the micronized powder, you  
03:18:40 23 said you blended it with lactose; right?

03:18:42 24 A. That's right.

03:18:43 25 Q. Can you explain that process on the next slide?



Smyth - Direct

03:18:45 1 A. I do, yeah. So we use this geometric. So we're  
03:18:49 2 trying to mix a very small amount of powder with a large  
03:18:52 3 amount of powder, pharmacists use this method as kind of --  
03:18:55 4 it's called geometric dilution or geometric pre-blending.  
03:19:01 5 Basically, you take your smaller amount of drug, which in  
03:19:04 6 this case is the micronized Treprostinil, and you add an  
03:19:07 7 equal amount of the lactose. And then you mix that and then  
03:19:12 8 you add -- now you have, like, 25 milligrams of -- of total  
03:19:20 9 powder. You add 25 milligrams of lactose. You mix that.  
03:19:24 10 And now you have 50 of the blend, and you add 50 more of the  
03:19:28 11 lactose and you just continue on until you achieve the  
03:19:32 12 desired quantity of powder that you wanted to mix with.  
03:19:37 13 Then you take that pre-blended material and throw it into  
03:19:40 14 this low-shear Turbula blender.

03:19:44 15 Q. Let me just check. You keep doubling the volume; is  
03:19:47 16 that right?

03:19:47 17 A. That's right.

03:19:48 18 Q. And so you keep adding the equal amount of whatever  
03:19:51 19 you've got in there to -- so for example, the -- you're  
03:19:54 20 adding 50 milligrams of lactose to 50 milligrams of the  
03:19:58 21 previously blended solution, then you've got 100, and then  
03:20:01 22 to that you are area adding another 100; right?

03:20:03 23 A. That's right.

03:20:03 24 Q. Is that why the blue gets progressively lighter?

03:20:07 25 A. That's right.

03:20:08 1 Q. And then so, you said you put it in a Turbula  
03:20:11 2 blender. What happens then?

03:20:12 3 A. That basically is just a tumble mixer, and it tosses  
03:20:16 4 the powder back and forth, and we did it for about  
03:20:19 5 30 minutes.

03:20:20 6 Q. And then what did you do after the blending process?

03:20:22 7 A. So then we tested to see whether or not the drug had  
03:20:26 8 been adequately blended or homogenized within this lactose  
03:20:31 9 to see if it was uniform throughout that powder.

03:20:34 10 Q. Okay. Can we go to the next slide. And what does  
03:20:37 11 this slide shows show?

03:20:38 12 A. This is, essentially, the testing that we did to --  
03:20:41 13 to test for blend uniformity. We took ten samples of the  
03:20:46 14 bulk powder and analyzed it for Treprostinil content and  
03:20:52 15 then we compared those ten results of Treprostinil amounts  
03:20:58 16 against each other to see if they were variable or uniform.

03:21:04 17 Q. And then have you prepared a demonstrative of what  
03:21:07 18 you did after this, after you did this testing for blend  
03:21:11 19 uniformity?

03:21:11 20 A. Yes.

03:21:12 21 Q. What was the next step you took?

03:21:13 22 A. So, once we established that blend uniformity was  
03:21:17 23 good, then we filled HPLC capsules with 20 milligrams of  
03:21:26 24 that blend and then tested, using the Plastiape RS01 or  
03:21:33 25 Aerolizer device, the aerosol performance and dose delivery

03:21:36 1 characteristics.

03:21:40 2 Q. And then what's the -- it says after the Plastiape  
03:21:43 3 device, it says an arrow to the cascade impactor. What does  
03:21:46 4 that mean?

03:21:47 5 A. Yes, this is the -- the instrument that I was using  
03:21:50 6 to characterize aerodynamic particle size distribution which  
03:21:53 7 was Dr. Clark had just gone over. Essentially, it  
03:22:00 8 classifies aerosols by their aerodynamic diameter.

03:22:06 9 Q. And in the context of the '793 patent, what sort of  
03:22:09 10 emitted dose would a person of ordinary skill be looking to  
03:22:13 11 see from this aerosol test?

03:22:15 12 A. So this is the 15 to 90 micrograms of Treprostinil  
03:22:22 13 limitation in the '793 patent.

03:22:26 14 Q. And is that the emitted dose you were looking for?

03:22:27 15 A. That's how I understood it.

03:22:28 16 Q. Okay. And so here you have testing results of  
03:22:31 17 emitted dose. Do you see that?

03:22:33 18 A. Yes.

03:22:33 19 Q. And it shows for Treprostinil sodium -- could you  
03:22:36 20 read what the emitted dose was.

03:22:38 21 A. Yeah, 47.15 for Treprostinil sodium. Treprostinil  
03:22:43 22 free acid 47.72, and Treprostinil diethanolamine 20.88.

03:22:50 23 Q. And tell me what you said -- also I have a column  
03:22:53 24 there that says fine particle dose. Do you see that?

03:22:55 25 A. Yes.

Smyth - Direct

03:22:56 1 Q. Why were you looking at fine particle dose?

03:22:57 2 A. That's representative of the quality of the aerosol  
03:23:02 3 as Dr. Clark introduced earlier. It essentially represents  
03:23:07 4 the proportion of the aerosol that would be considered  
03:23:14 5 respirable.

03:23:14 6 Q. And so what steps at all did you take next?

03:23:18 7 A. Well, based on these results -- these are the  
03:23:22 8 averages by the way. Individually, we saw quite a bit of  
03:23:26 9 variability in the -- how each capsule performed and plus  
03:23:33 10 the fine particle dose, as you can see, it was fairly low in  
03:23:37 11 some cases. So, I made a couple modifications to the jet  
03:23:44 12 milling and then the lactose that we used as well.

03:23:50 13 Q. Okay. So tell me what modifications you did for the  
03:23:53 14 jet milling process.

03:23:53 15 A. So instead of a single cycle jet mill, we put it  
03:23:57 16 through the jet mill three times to get a more uniform and  
03:24:02 17 narrowly particle-sized Treprostinil powders.

03:24:08 18 Q. So, I want to have you look at Exhibit 1314 in your  
03:24:14 19 binder. And could we pull that up on the screen.

03:24:17 20 Can you tell me what this is.

03:24:24 21 A. Yeah, this is a particle size distribution that are  
03:24:30 22 obtained using the laser diffraction.

03:24:33 23 Q. And is the document, I believe, labeled TR3XJM\_TRA-H.  
03:24:40 24 Can you tell me what that means?

03:24:41 25 A. Yes. This is the particle size for the Treprostinil

Smyth - Direct

03:24:44 1 free acid that was micronized three times.

03:24:48 2 Q. And now I'd like you to pull up Exhibit 1313, please.

03:24:56 3 I believe this is entitled he will 3XJM\_TRE-DA. Can you

03:25:02 4 tell me what this is.

03:25:03 5 A. So this is the particle size distribution of the

03:25:07 6 three times jet milled Treprostinil diethanolamine salt

03:25:12 7 showing that, you know, you've got a lot of particles less

03:25:14 8 than 5 microns.

03:25:16 9 Q. And now I'd like to you point up 1319, please, which

03:25:20 10 I believe is the Document 3XJM-TRE-NA. Can you tell me what

03:25:26 11 this is.

03:25:27 12 A. So this is the particle size distribution of the

03:25:29 13 three times jet milled Treprostinil sodium, and you can see

03:25:34 14 there that actually we were, in my lab, unsuccessful in jet

03:25:39 15 milling that substantially below 5 microns.

03:25:42 16 MR. JACKSON: Okay. And so I move to admit

03:25:44 17 Exhibits 1314, 1313, and 1319.

03:25:49 18 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:25:50 19 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:25:51 20 (PTX Exhibit Nos. 1313, 1314, and 1319 were

03:25:52 21 admitted into evidence.)

03:25:52 22 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:25:53 23 Q. What did you conclude from these jet milling results?

03:25:55 24 A. At least the Treprostinil free acid and the

03:25:59 25 Treprostinil diethanolamine were going to be suitable for

03:26:03 1       formulating drug.

03:26:07 2       Q.       Those were the Exhibits 1313 and 1314 where you  
03:26:10 3       showed the graph; is that right?

03:26:11 4       A.       Yes.

03:26:13 5       Q.       And then have you prepared a slide about --  
03:26:17 6       identifying what you did next after the jet milling process?

03:26:19 7       A.       Yes.

03:26:22 8       Q.       What did you do?

03:26:22 9       A.       Essentially took the same thing as before. We  
03:26:27 10       blended it what with lactose. In this round of experiments,  
03:26:32 11       we had adjusted the lactose composition to include some  
03:26:37 12       lactose fine as well as the original coarse lactose to  
03:26:42 13       improve the flowability of the drug.

03:26:44 14       Q.       So you used two different kinds of lactose; is that  
03:26:46 15       right?

03:26:46 16       A.       That's right.

03:26:47 17       Q.       And then what did you do after pre-blending the  
03:26:50 18       lactose?

03:26:50 19       A.       We pre-blended it using that dilution method. And  
03:26:55 20       then put it in the Turbula mixer for exactly the same time  
03:26:59 21       and then we did the blend uniformity measurement.

03:27:04 22       Q.       And what results would a person of ordinary skill  
03:27:08 23       look for in determining whether the blend uniformity was  
03:27:13 24       successful?

03:27:13 25       A.       Typically, you want low variability in my lab.

Smyth - Direct

03:27:19 1 Person of ordinary skill in the art would look at  
03:27:21 2 variability as less than 10 percent or 15 percent. We used  
03:27:24 3 a 10 percent cutoff in this these experiments.

03:27:28 4 Q. I'd like to show you what's been marked as 1347,  
03:27:31 5 please.

03:27:34 6 This is a labeled 3XJMTRE-H Blend Uniformity 3  
03:27:43 7 November, 2021. Do you see that?

03:27:45 8 A. Yes.

03:27:46 9 Q. And tell me, -- can you tell me what this is.

03:27:50 10 A. This is an Excel spreadsheet summarizing the blend  
03:27:54 11 uniformity results. And if you look down at the bottom box,  
03:28:03 12 right at the bottom of the slide, there's in very small  
03:28:07 13 print percent CV. That's the percent variability. We call  
03:28:11 14 percent variation.

03:28:13 15 Q. And that's what we're -- that's the little box down  
03:28:14 16 in at the middle bottom?

03:28:16 17 A. Yes.

03:28:17 18 Q. Little box. There you go. Thank you.

03:28:21 19 And so what does percent CV stand for?

03:28:22 20 A. That is the percent coefficient of variation. It's  
03:28:25 21 the standard deviation divided by mean times 100.

03:28:28 22 Q. And so what number were you looking for that number  
03:28:31 23 to be?

03:28:31 24 A. Less than ten.

03:28:32 25 Q. And so it's just less than two; is that right?

Smyth - Direct

03:28:35 1 A. That's right.

03:28:37 2 MR. JACKSON: Move to admit PTX 1437.

03:28:40 3 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:28:40 4 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:28:42 5 (PTX Exhibit No. 1347 was admitted into  
03:28:42 6 evidence.)

03:28:42 7 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:28:43 8 Q. I'd like to show you 1342 as well. Can you tell me  
03:28:49 9 what this is?

03:28:50 10 A. So, this is the blend uniformity of the Treprostinil  
03:28:56 11 diethanolamine. Just went through that that we made. And  
03:29:01 12 here you can see in red in that box down below the rate of  
03:29:05 13 uniformity was too high. It was 20 percent.

03:29:08 14 Q. Okay. And so what did you do next on this batch?

03:29:10 15 A. Essentially, we took this powder, put it through a  
03:29:16 16 sieve, and reblended it and tested the blend for uniformity  
03:29:21 17 again.

03:29:21 18 Q. And now I'd like to show you what's been marked as  
03:29:25 19 1343. And what does this show -- or what document -- what's  
03:29:31 20 this document?

03:29:32 21 A. This is the reblended -- the sieved and reblending  
03:29:37 22 Treprostinil diethanolamine formulation showing a percent CV  
03:29:43 23 of around about 5.

03:29:45 24 Q. So the previous you one you looked at with the  
03:29:48 25 20 percent, you sieved and reblended and this was the



Smyth - Direct

03:29:50 1 result?

03:29:50 2 A. That's right.

03:29:51 3 MR. JACKSON: Move to admit 1342 and 1343,  
03:29:54 4 please.

03:29:54 5 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:29:55 6 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:29:57 7 (PTX Exhibit Nos. 1342 and 1343 were admitted  
03:29:57 8 into evidence.)

03:29:57 9 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:29:59 10 Q. Now, did you prepare a demonstrative to show the next  
03:30:01 11 step in your testing?

03:30:02 12 A. I think so.

03:30:06 13 Q. So what did you do?

03:30:07 14 A. We took those powders which had passed through the  
03:30:11 15 blend uniformity test and put them in the capsule again.  
03:30:18 16 Used the Plastiapne and tested them using the cascade  
03:30:22 17 impactor the aerosol and test performance.

03:30:25 18 Q. And so I'd like to show you what's been marked as  
03:30:28 19 1345. Can you tell me what this document is?

03:30:34 20 A. It is an Excel spreadsheet which summarizes the  
03:30:41 21 results of that next-generation impacted impactor air seal  
03:30:45 22 test.

03:30:45 23 MR. JACKSON: Move to admit 1345.

03:30:47 24 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:30:48 25 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

Smyth - Direct

03:30:48 1 (PTX Exhibit No. 1345 was admitted into  
03:30:50 2 evidence.)

03:30:50 3 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:30:52 4 Q. Now, this was the results of your testing; right?

03:30:57 5 A. Yes.

03:30:58 6 Q. So, what does it show for what did you get for the  
03:31:01 7 emitted dose on these?

03:31:02 8 A. So we'll go down the bottom. There's a table. Yeah.  
03:31:06 9 In each one of the columns, columns 2, 3, and 4, represent  
03:31:12 10 different capsules that were tested. So for capsule 1,  
03:31:17 11 52.42 micrograms of Treprostinil, 53.70 for the second one  
03:31:24 12 and 54.5 for the third.

03:31:28 13 Q. And those were emitted doses; right?

03:31:29 14 A. That's right.

03:31:30 15 Q. And then what was the fine particle dose of each?

03:31:33 16 A. That's the line directly below, the 17.23, 16.81, and  
03:31:41 17 21.55.

03:31:42 18 Q. Okay. Now, I'd like to show you what's been marked  
03:31:46 19 as 1344. What's this document?

03:31:52 20 A. This is another Excel spreadsheet of which I presume  
03:31:59 21 is the -- I can't -- yeah, this is the Treprostinil  
03:32:05 22 diethanolamine formulation that we ran that had -- yeah, it  
03:32:12 23 looks like it had about 100-micrograms loading in the  
03:32:17 24 capsule. And these are the emitted doses and fine doses.

03:32:21 25 Q. And so what were the emitted doses?

Smyth - Direct

03:32:23 1 A. 52.85, 50.3, 54.67.

03:32:28 2 Q. And what were the fine particle doses?

03:32:30 3 A. 14.83, 15.1, and 14.91.

03:32:34 4 Q. And this is the thing -- this is the set of results  
03:32:38 5 after that sieving and reblending; is that right?

03:32:40 6 A. That is correct.

03:32:41 7 Q. Okay. So let's go back to your demonstrative,  
03:32:44 8 please. Are those the numbers you show in your  
03:32:48 9 demonstrative from the 13 -- actually, let me just check.

03:32:52 10 MR. JACKSON: Move to admits 1344. I don't  
03:32:54 11 think I've done that yet.

03:32:55 12 MR. SUKDUANG: No objection.

03:32:56 13 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:32:57 14 (PTX Exhibit No. 1344 was admitted into  
03:32:58 15 evidence.)

03:32:58 16 BY MR. JACKSON:

03:32:58 17 Q. So, back here, so are these the results of those  
03:33:02 18 tests you just superimposed here?

03:33:04 19 A. Yes.

03:33:06 20 Q. And so what did you find?

03:33:07 21 A. I found that -- that the emitted doses were within  
03:33:13 22 the limitation of the claims.

03:33:19 23 Q. Now, did you reach a conclusion following your  
03:33:22 24 testing about the degree of experimentation that would be  
03:33:25 25 required to practice these claims?

## Smyth - Cross

03:33:26 1 A. Based on this, you know, three weeks of testing and  
03:33:34 2 optimized systems, I thought it would be -- there would not  
03:33:38 3 be undue experimentation to develop a drug dry-powder and  
03:33:43 4 have a formulation to meet those limitations of the '793  
03:33:47 5 patent.

03:33:47 6 Q. And, again, you did all that in about three weeks; is  
03:33:50 7 that right?

03:33:50 8 A. That's right.

03:33:51 9 MR. JACKSON: Pass the witness, Your Honor.

03:33:53 10 THE COURT: All right.

03:33:59 11 CROSS-EXAMINATION

03:33:59 12 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

03:34:00 13 Q. Hello, Dr. Smyth. Nice to see you again.

03:34:02 14 A. Yeah, hi.

03:34:02 15 Q. You received Treprostinil, Treprostinil sodium, and  
03:34:04 16 Treprostinil diethanolamine salt, and Treprostinil free acid  
03:34:08 17 from UTC; correct?

03:34:09 18 A. I did, yes.

03:34:09 19 Q. And UTC, they shipped Treprostinil sodium and  
03:34:13 20 Treprostinil free acid to you under cold-pack conditions;  
03:34:15 21 correct?

03:34:15 22 A. I believe so, yes.

03:34:16 23 Q. Can you look at DTX 618. It's on the screen for you.  
03:34:21 24 It will be on the screen for you, Dr. Smyth.

03:34:23 25 And can you turn to Page 18 for me. And Page 18

03:34:30 1 is your shipping from your lab, your receipt of the  
03:34:33 2 Treprostinil sodium and Treprostinil free acid; correct?

03:34:35 3 A. That's correct.

03:34:37 4 Q. And it says on the shipping temp cold pack; correct?

03:34:41 5 A. Yes, I see that.

03:34:43 6 Q. And that's not ambient temperature; is that correct?

03:34:45 7 A. That's not ambient.

03:34:46 8 Q. And when you received the Treprostinil sodium from  
03:34:50 9 United Therapeutics, after you unpacked it, you put the  
03:34:53 10 Treprostinil sodium in the refrigerator; correct?

03:34:55 11 A. One of the people in my lab did, yes.

03:34:58 12 Q. Right. And you didn't keep it in ambient  
03:35:00 13 temperature; correct?

03:35:00 14 A. Correct.

03:35:00 15 Q. That's because when you received it cold pack, it  
03:35:04 16 tells you as a scientist, hey, I need to refrigerate this  
03:35:07 17 because it was shipped this way; correct?

03:35:08 18 A. That's correct.

03:35:10 19 Q. Now, you tested Treprostinil sodium, is that right,  
03:35:13 20 and as one of your examples?

03:35:14 21 A. Yes.

03:35:14 22 Q. And you found when you tested Treprostinil sodium, it  
03:35:18 23 was too hygroscopic to create a powder blend; correct?

03:35:21 24 A. In my lab, yes. It was -- we could see it, basically  
03:35:25 25 taking it out of the bottle, jet milling it, trying to

03:35:30 1 collect it, it was starting to take on moisture. It was  
03:35:34 2 very hygroscopic.

03:35:35 3 Q. And you just look at -- again, before you jet mill,  
03:35:37 4 you could look at the Treprostinil sodium that you were  
03:35:38 5 going to use and based on visual inspection, you saw there  
03:35:41 6 was hygroscopicity?

03:35:42 7 A. I'm not sure if it was before we jet milled, but  
03:35:45 8 definitely after -- after we jet milled, yes.

03:35:47 9 Q. And you tried to make a powder blend. I think you  
03:35:49 10 testified you used a one-time jet mill with the three forms  
03:35:53 11 of Treprostinil you received?

03:35:55 12 A. That's right.

03:35:56 13 Q. And a one-time jet milled through all three forms of  
03:36:02 14 Treprostinil didn't provide suitable dispersion and particle  
03:36:07 15 size; correct?

03:36:07 16 A. I thought it could be improved, so I did the -- the  
03:36:13 17 three times jet milled.

03:36:14 18 Q. Right. It wasn't suitable enough. You had to  
03:36:16 19 improve it; correct?

03:36:17 20 A. It wasn't going to be too hard for me to three times  
03:36:22 21 jet mill it, so I thought let's do the three times jet mill  
03:36:25 22 and get even better results.

03:36:27 23 Q. Sure. So, one time wasn't suitable enough for you.  
03:36:29 24 You had to three-time jet mill it?

03:36:32 25 A. I saw a -- quite a bit of variability, at least, with

03:36:34 1 the one-time experiments that we did.

03:36:35 2 Q. And you didn't even try to three time jet mill the  
03:36:39 3 Treprostinil sodium; correct?

03:36:40 4 A. We jet milled it, but then, you know, we couldn't get  
03:36:45 5 -- as you saw on the laser diffraction -- diffractogram, the  
03:36:50 6 sizes were, at least by that method, weren't very small. So  
03:36:55 7 I decided I had to devote my efforts to the free acid and  
03:37:00 8 diethanolamine.

03:37:00 9 Q. Right. So, after -- and you're correct. After three  
03:37:03 10 times jet milling the Treprostinil sodium, there was too  
03:37:06 11 much variability in the particle size, so you decided to not  
03:37:09 12 focus on that and instead focus on the free acid and the  
03:37:13 13 diethanolamine; correct?

03:37:14 14 A. Yes, in the conditions in my lab, which in Austin,  
03:37:18 15 Texas, we don't have humidity control. So, it was probably  
03:37:22 16 pretty pointless for us to continue with that Treprostinil  
03:37:25 17 sodium.

03:37:25 18 Q. Now, with the Treprostinil sodium, you actually tried  
03:37:27 19 to use a dry box, didn't you, to control humidity?

03:37:30 20 A. We -- we did. It's not really a dry box, but a -- it  
03:37:35 21 was a glove box.

03:37:36 22 Q. A glove box, yes. And you used a glove box during  
03:37:40 23 your experimentations with the Treprostinil sodium to  
03:37:43 24 control humidity; correct?

03:37:45 25 A. Certain parts of that preparation process we could do

03:37:49 1 in the dry box or in the glove box. Other parts of that  
03:37:54 2 process, we couldn't because the equipment wouldn't fit  
03:37:57 3 inside of that dry box.

03:37:58 4 Q. And even with using the glove box to control  
03:38:00 5 humidity, you weren't able to make a suitable dry-powder  
03:38:04 6 formulation because of the hygroscopicity of the  
03:38:08 7 Treprostinil sodium?

03:38:08 8 A. Right. During jet milling, it's a mill. It doesn't  
03:38:12 9 fit inside of a glove box. I forgot --

03:38:15 10 Q. Go ahead. I'm sorry.

03:38:18 11 A. I was just going to say that the -- when we're doing  
03:38:21 12 the jet milling, it doesn't fit inside the glove box. And  
03:38:25 13 then -- then that's when you're breaking down the particles  
03:38:27 14 and creating a lot of surface air. That's where a lot of  
03:38:32 15 moisture can be found.

03:38:32 16 Q. So, during what you considered normal processing, you  
03:38:34 17 weren't able to control the hygro -- hygroscopicity. I'm  
03:38:39 18 going to get that by the end of the day. By the time --  
03:38:41 19 during the normal processing you were using, you could not  
03:38:46 20 control the hygroscopicity of the Treprostinil sodium such  
03:38:50 21 that the jet milling provided suitable particle sizes?

03:38:53 22 A. Right. In our lab, the high humidity, you know, we  
03:39:01 23 couldn't do jet milling of the sodium salt properly.

03:39:04 24 Q. Now, you have a lab notebook that you recorded your  
03:39:08 25 experiments in; correct?



03:39:09 1 A. That's right.

03:39:10 2 Q. And in your lab notebook, which I believe is DTX 600,  
03:39:17 3 you actually noted the humidities when you conducted the  
03:39:21 4 experiments; correct?

03:39:22 5 A. Well, what I told my post-doc is to write down the  
03:39:29 6 humidity and the temperature in the lab that -- at the start  
03:39:33 7 of the experiment.

03:39:34 8 Q. And there's no humidity in your notebook, DTX 600,  
03:39:38 9 above about 43 percent; correct?

03:39:40 10 A. That would be correct. But during the course of the  
03:39:45 11 day, the humidity would climb in our lab, and I noted that  
03:39:51 12 there were relative humidities higher than that.

03:39:55 13 MR. SUKDUANG: Okay. I'd like to admit DTX 600  
03:40:00 14 into evidence.

03:40:00 15 MR. JACKSON: No objection, Your Honor.

03:40:02 16 THE COURT: Admitted without objection.

03:40:03 17 MR. SUKDUANG: And DTX 618, which was a shipping  
03:40:05 18 receiving information --

03:40:06 19 (DTX Exhibit No. 600 was admitted into  
03:40:07 20 evidence.)

03:40:07 21 MR. SUKDUANG: -- into evidence.

03:40:08 22 MR. JACKSON: No objection.

03:40:08 23 THE COURT: All right. Admitted without  
03:40:10 24 objection.

03:40:10 25 (DTX Exhibit No. 618 was admitted into

03:40:11 1 evidence.)

03:40:11 2 BY MR. SUKDUANG:

03:40:11 3 Q. And the claims of the seven -- hold on. You don't  
03:40:14 4 have -- although you say that humidity increased, what you  
03:40:18 5 actually wrote in your notebook didn't note that humidity  
03:40:22 6 increase; is that correct?

03:40:23 7 A. That's correct.

03:40:25 8 Q. When you conducted your testing with the dry-powder  
03:40:27 9 inhaler, you did not test it in pulmonary arterial  
03:40:30 10 hypertension patients; correct?

03:40:32 11 A. That's correct.

03:40:32 12 Q. You did not test it in healthy subjects; correct?

03:40:35 13 A. That's correct.

03:40:36 14 Q. You used a machine to do that testing; correct?

03:40:39 15 A. The next generation testing.

03:40:41 16 Q. Now, I asked you during the deposition and I took  
03:40:43 17 your deposition, you had -- you had no more formulations  
03:40:47 18 left in the capsule by the time you were deposed; correct?  
03:40:52 19 You had no more of the powder blends in capsules that were  
03:40:57 20 left?

03:40:58 21 A. Yeah, I wasn't sure if we had any left in the lab or  
03:41:01 22 not.

03:41:01 23 Q. And I asked you that, if you did have more of those  
03:41:05 24 Treprostinil formulations sitting in your lab, and if you  
03:41:08 25 stored them properly, you would not advise giving those

03:41:11 1 formulations to pulmonary hypertension patients without  
03:41:14 2 conducting more studies on that formulation; isn't that  
03:41:18 3 correct?

03:41:18 4 A. I think that's fair, yes.

03:41:21 5 MR. SUKDUANG: No further questions. Your  
03:41:22 6 Honor.

03:41:22 7 THE COURT: All right. Any redirect?

03:41:23 8 MR. JACKSON: Nothing, Your Honor. Thank you.

03:41:25 9 THE COURT: All right. Dr. Smyth, thank you.  
03:41:27 10 You can step down.

03:41:29 11 MR. JACKSON: Your Honor, United Therapeutics  
03:41:33 12 rests.

03:41:34 13 THE COURT: Okay.

03:41:35 14 MR. JACKSON: Thank you.

03:41:36 15 THE COURT: All right. And Liquidia, are you  
03:41:39 16 done?

03:41:40 17 MR. SUKDUANG: I'm sorry. I was talking to  
03:41:45 18 counsel. They rested? They closed their case?

03:41:47 19 THE COURT: Yes.

03:41:48 20 MR. SUKDUANG: Then yes, we are finished, Your  
03:41:49 21 Honor.

03:41:49 22 THE COURT: Okay. Great.

03:41:59 23 All right. So we have summations scheduled  
03:42:02 24 tomorrow morning; right?

03:42:04 25 So, they're scheduled for 8:30. I think I'd

## Smyth - Cross

03:42:09 1 like to move them back to 9 o'clock. Is that all right?

03:42:11 2 MR. JACKSON: As you wish, Your Honor.

03:42:12 3 MR. SUKDUANG: That's fine.

03:42:13 4 THE COURT: Okay. Did I set how long they were  
03:42:15 5 going to be?

03:42:16 6 MR. SUKDUANG: You said 30 minutes, 30-ish  
03:42:19 7 minutes each, but you didn't --

03:42:21 8 THE COURT: All right.

03:42:22 9 MR. SUKDUANG: -- definitively say.

03:42:24 10 THE COURT: Well, 30 minutes seems reasonable.  
03:42:33 11 So, I can't remember because I did this last week, too. I'm  
03:42:42 12 not looking for a slide show tomorrow. Did I give you that  
03:42:45 13 speech?

03:42:45 14 MR. SUKDUANG: Yes.

03:42:46 15 THE COURT: Okay. All right.

03:42:48 16 So, if you can all talk to each other about  
03:42:51 17 post-trial briefing overnight so that after we're finished  
03:42:56 18 with the argument, we can discuss that subject. Or did I  
03:42:59 19 already decide that?

03:43:00 20 MR. JACKSON: No, we've actually started the  
03:43:01 21 conversations already, Your Honor, but we will -- we're  
03:43:04 22 working on it.

03:43:04 23 THE COURT: Well --

03:43:05 24 MR. JACKSON: We'll have that conversation  
03:43:06 25 tomorrow.

03:43:06 1 THE COURT: Yeah. Okay.

03:43:08 2 Anything else you want to talk about now?

03:43:10 3 MR. SUKDUANG: Just a question on closings. You  
03:43:12 4 had indicated previously, like, you want to have a  
03:43:15 5 conversation.

03:43:16 6 THE COURT: Well, when I say "conversation," I  
03:43:18 7 don't mean that the 30 minutes is going to be question and  
03:43:23 8 answer. I mean, it's a closing argument like I'm a juror.

03:43:26 9 MR. SUKDUANG: Okay.

03:43:27 10 THE COURT: But it's possible that when you're  
03:43:31 11 done with the summation, I might have some questions, but I  
03:43:35 12 might not. It depends.

03:43:37 13 MR. SUKDUANG: That clarifies. I just wanted to  
03:43:41 14 make sure it wasn't just we're going to sit down and you ask  
03:43:44 15 us questions.

03:43:44 16 THE COURT: No, no, no. It's your chance to  
03:43:50 17 persuade me how you won the case.

03:43:54 18 And -- okay. Anything else?

03:43:56 19 MR. JACKSON: Not from Plaintiffs, Your Honor.

03:43:57 20 THE COURT: Thank you. All right.

03:43:59 21 Okay. Well, thank you. I will see you tomorrow  
03:44:02 22 morning. Have a good evening.

03:44:04 23 MR. SUKDUANG: Thank you, Your Honor.

03:44:05 24 DEPUTY CLERK: All rise.

03:44:07 25 (Court was recessed at 3:44 p.m.)

1 I hereby certify the foregoing is a true and  
2 accurate transcript from my stenographic notes in the  
3 proceeding.

/s/ Heather M. Triozzi  
Certified Merit and Real-Time Reporter  
U.S. District Court